

3 1761 08820177 7

MAGMILLAN'S  
ORTER LATIN COURSE


A. M. COOK, M.A.

AMERICAN EDITION

J. C. EOBERT, JR., PH.D.







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2011 with funding from  
University of Toronto



SHORTER LATIN COURSE



Lal.Gr  
C 7713 ma E

MACMILLAN'S

# SHORTER LATIN COURSE

BY

A. M. COOK, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER IN ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

*REVISED AND ENLARGED FOR THE USE OF  
AMERICAN SCHOOLS*

BY J. C. EGBERT, JR., PH.D.

ADJ. PROFESSOR OF LATIN, COLUMBIA COLLEGE

TORONTO

THE COPP CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED

1899

295886  
—  
25. 1. 34

COPYRIGHT, 1892,  
BY MACMILLAN AND CO.

---

Revised edition printed August, 1892; May, 1893;  
August, 1895; September, 1896; July, 1897; June,  
1899.

Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith  
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.

## PREFACE.



It has been shown by experience that elementary Latin books, to accomplish their purpose, must present the fundamental principles of the language and its system of inflections in the simplest and clearest form. They must also provide abundant means for the application of these principles and for practice in the use of inflected forms. With these characteristics there must be combined a natural and attractive development, so that difficulties may be readily overcome by reason of the very method in which they are approached.

It is believed that the present work in its revised and enlarged form possesses these qualifications in an unusually large degree. The design has been to give only essential grammatical information, with the largest opportunity for practice. Attention is called to the selections for translation, inserted even in the early pages of the work. These narratives arouse the interest of the pupil, and neutralize whatever is detrimental in the fragmentary presentation of the language in the short sentences.

The American editor is responsible for the following: The Introduction; the additional pages upon the Subjunctive Mood; the revision of paradigms in the main portion of the book and the paradigms of the verbs in the supplement; the indications of long vowels; a few changes in orthography, such as *transilio* for *transsilio*, *conicio* for *conjicio*, *quotiens* for *quoties*.

Few students when entering college are found to possess the ability to pronounce and read Latin with correctness or fluency. The suggestion is therefore made and emphasized that at the very beginning the pupil be required to read the Latin before any translation is given, and that reviews be conducted entirely in Latin. The great object to be aimed at is that the pupil should think in the Latin. The full pronunciation of the Roman method, with careful observance of quantity, will be found to be a most valuable addition to elementary work.

J. C. E.

NEW YORK, 1892.

# CONTENTS.



	PAGE
<b>Introduction —</b>	
Pronunciation ; Quantity and Accent . . .	1-5
<b>SECT.</b>	
1. <b>First Declension : Singular</b> . . . . .	6
2. <b>The Accusative Case</b> . . . . .	6
3. <b>First Declension : Singular</b> ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	8
4. <b>First Declension : Plural</b> . . . . .	8
5. <b>Second Declension : Nouns in -us</b> . . . . .	10
6. <b>Second Declension : Neuter Nouns</b> . . . . .	12
7. <b>Second Declension : Adjectives in -us -a -um : Singular</b>	13
8. <b>Second Declension : Adjectives in -us -a -um : Plural</b>	15
9. <b>Second Declension : Nouns in -er</b> . . . . .	16
10. <b>Est — Sunt</b> . . . . .	18
TRANSLATION I. A Letter of a Father to his Boy at School . . . . .	19
TRANSLATION II. Romulus and Remus . . . . .	20
TRANSLATION III. The Black Slave . . . . .	20
11. <b>Third Declension : Case-Endings</b> . . . . .	20
12. <b>The Gender shown by Meaning</b> . . . . .	22
TRANSLATION IV. A Fable . . . . .	25
13. <b>The Stem</b> . . . . .	25
14. <b>Genitive Plural</b> . . . . .	27
15. <b>Genitive Plural</b> ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	29
TRANSLATION V. Coriolanus . . . . .	31
16. <b>Endings of Neuter Nouns</b> . . . . .	31
17. <b>Endings of Neuter Nouns</b> ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	33
TRANSLATION VI. Theseus and Ariadne . . . . .	34
18. <b>Gender of Nouns by Termination : The Masculine Rule</b>	35
TRANSLATION VII. A Surprise . . . . .	37

SECT.	PAGE
19. The Feminine Rule . . . . .	38
TRANSLATION VIII. The Roman Army fights a Serpent . . . . .	40
20. The Neuter Rule . . . . .	41
21. The Neuter Rule ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	42
TRANSLATION IX. A Battle . . . . .	44
22. Exceptions to these Gender Rules . . . . .	44
23. Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	46
24. Adjectives of the Third Declension ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	48
25. Adjectives of the Third Declension ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	50
TRANSLATION X. A Roman Account of Britain . . . . .	52
Recapitulatory Exercises — A-D . . . . .	53
26. Fourth Declension . . . . .	55
27. Fourth Declension: Neuter Nouns . . . . .	56
28. Fourth Declension: <i>Domus</i> . . . . .	57
29. Fifth Declension . . . . .	59
TRANSLATION XI. A Ghost . . . . .	60
30. Comparison of Adjectives: Comparative . . . . .	61
31. Comparison of Adjectives: Superlative . . . . .	63
TRANSLATION XII. Arminius . . . . .	65
32. Comparison of Adjectives: Superlative ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	65
33. Irregular Comparison . . . . .	67
TRANSLATION XIII. Ixion, Sisyphus, and Tantalus . . . . .	68
34. Cardinal Numerals . . . . .	69
35. Ordinal Numerals . . . . .	72
TRANSLATION XIV. Dates in Early English History . . . . .	73
36. The Verb: <i>Esse</i> . . . . .	74
37. The Verb: <i>Esse</i> ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	75
38. The Verb: <i>Esse</i> ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	77
TRANSLATIONS XV., XVI. Bannockburn . . . . .	79
39. Pronouns: <i>Ego, Tu, Se</i> . . . . .	80
40. Pronouns: <i>Hic, Ille</i> . . . . .	82
41. Pronouns: <i>Is, Idem</i> . . . . .	84
42. Pronouns: <i>Ipse, Iste</i> . . . . .	86
43. Irregular Adjectives: <i>Totus, Añius</i> . . . . .	88
44. Irregular Adjectives: <i>Uter, Alter</i> . . . . .	90
45. Pronouns: <i>Qui, Quis</i> . . . . .	92



SECT.	PAGE
TRANSLATION XVII. Ulysses and Polyphemus — I. .	94
Recapitulatory Exercises — E-I . . . . .	94
46. Verbs: Active, Indicative: First Conjugation . .	97
47. Verbs: Active, Indicative: First Conjugation ( <i>contd.</i> )	98
48. Verbs: Active, Indicative: First Conjugation ( <i>contd.</i> )	100
49. Verbs: Active, Imperative, Infinitive: First Conjugation . . . . .	101
TRANSLATION XVIII. Ulysses and Polyphemus — II.	102
50. Second Conjugation . . . . .	103
51. Second Conjugation ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	104
TRANSLATION XIX. Ulysses and Polyphemus — III..	105
52. Third Conjugation . . . . .	106
53. Third Conjugation ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	108
TRANSLATION XX. Ulysses and Polyphemus — IV. .	109
54. Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	110
55. Fourth Conjugation ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	112
TRANSLATION XXI. Ulysses and Polyphemus — V..	113
TRANSLATION XXII. Gaius Mucius Scaevola . .	113
Recapitulatory Exercises — J-M . . . . .	114
56. Passive Indicative: First Conjugation . . . .	116
57. Passive Indicative: First Conjugation . . . .	118
TRANSLATION XXIII. A Cork Leg . . . . .	119
58. Second Conjugation . . . . .	120
59. Second Conjugation ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	121
TRANSLATIONS XXIV., XXV. David and Goliath .	122
60. Third Conjugation . . . . .	124
61. Third Conjugation ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	125
TRANSLATION XXVI. Nasica and Ennius . .	126
TRANSLATION XXVII. Literal Obedience . . .	126
62. Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	127
63. Fourth Conjugation ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	128
TRANSLATION XXVIII. Bacchus and the Pirates .	129
Recapitulatory Exercises — N-Q . . . . .	130
Subjunctive Mood —	
64. Sequence of Tenses, Indirect Questions . . .	133
65. Final Clauses . . . . .	135

SECT.	PAGE
66. Final Clauses (negative) . . . . .	137
67. Consecutive Clauses . . . . .	138
68. Independent Sentences . . . . .	139
69. Subjunctive (Hortatory) and Imperative . . . . .	141
70. Miscellaneous Sentences . . . . .	142
Conjugation of the Verbs . . . . .	143
Vocabularies to the First Four Pieces of Translation	177
Latin-English Dictionary . . . . .	179
English-Latin Dictionary . . . . .	200

# SHORTER LATIN COURSE.



## INTRODUCTION.

### PRONUNCIATION.

1. **Alphabet.** — The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, save that it lacks *w*.

NOTE. — *k* is found only in a few words, e.g. *Kalendae*, and as an abbreviation, e.g. *K.* for *Kaeso*, a Roman surname. *y* and *z* are found only in words of foreign origin. The characters *j* and *v* did not originally belong to the Latin alphabet, but are additions of the mediæval period. They were used then to distinguish *i* the vowel from *i* the consonant, i.e. *j*; and *u* the vowel from *u* the consonant, i.e. *v* (pronounced as labial *v*, nearly our *w*).

2. **Letters.** — Letters are either vowels or consonants. The vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, *y*. The remaining letters of the alphabet are consonants.

3. **Vowels.** — Vowels may be long (indicated thus —), or short (indicated thus ∪), or common (indicated thus ∩).

NOTE. — The long and short vowels differ only in the length of time required in their pronunciation. This is termed the *Quantity* of the vowel. The long vowel requires twice the time in pronunciation that a short vowel does. (In this book all long vowels are marked. The short vowels are indicated only at times to save ambiguity.)

4. **Consonants.** — Consonants may be classified as follows : —

Mutes,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} p, b, f \\ t, d \\ k, c, g, q(u) \end{array} \right.$
Liquids,	$l, m, n, r$
Sibilant,	$s$
Double consonants,	$x$ and $z$ .

5. **Sounds of the Letters.** — There are two methods of pronouncing Latin among English-speaking people.

They are: 1. The Roman Method.

2. The English Method.

The Roman or phonetic method is generally accepted by modern scholars as the one presenting in a fairly exact manner the pronunciation of the educated Romans of the Augustan Age. It simplifies pronunciation, since it has but one sound for each letter, and it aids in the study of Latin versification and comparative philology.

NOTE. — It must be remembered that the difference between the long and short vowels is a matter of time required in pronunciation. The English words chosen represent only approximately this difference.

*a. Roman Method.*

Vowels: *ā* is sounded like the last *a* in *mammā*.

<i>ă</i>	“	“	“	<i>a</i>	in comma.
<i>ē</i>	“	“	“	<i>a</i>	“ fray.
<i>ě</i>	“	“	“	<i>e</i>	“ fret.
<i>ī</i>	“	“	“	<i>i</i>	“ machine.
<i>ĩ</i>	“	“	“	<i>i</i>	“ thin.
<i>ō</i>	“	“	“	<i>o</i>	“ hole.
<i>ŏ</i>	“	“	“	<i>o</i>	“ rod.
<i>ū</i>	“	“	“	<i>oo</i>	“ pool, not like <i>u</i> in cute.
<i>ũ</i>	“	“	“	<i>u</i>	“ pull, “ “ <i>u</i> “ but.

Diphthongs: *ae* is like aye.

<i>au</i>	“	“	<i>ow</i>	in cow.
<i>ei</i>	“	“	<i>ei</i>	“ feint.
<i>eu</i>	“	“	<i>u</i>	“ cute.
<i>oe</i>	“	“	<i>oi</i>	“ oil.
<i>ui</i>	“	“	<i>wee</i>	“ tweed.

Consonants: *b* is sounded like English *b*, save that before *s* and *t* it is like English *p*. *urbs* = *urps* (not *herbs*), *oblineo* = *optineo*. So *scribō* has perf. *scripsi* and supine *scriptum*.

*c* is sounded like English *k*, or *c* in *cat*.

*g* is sounded like English *g* in *give*.

*j* (*i* consonant), is like *y* in *young*.

*q*, always followed by *u*, is like English *qu*.

*v* (*u* consonant), is like *w* in *woe*.

*t* is like English *t*, never like *sh*.

*s* is like *s* in *sill*, not like *z*. It is always a sharp hiss.

*ch* is like *k*.

*b. The English Method.* The letters are sounded as in English.

Vowels: <i>ā</i> as in mate.	<i>ă</i> as in hat.
<i>ē</i> as <i>ee</i> " feet.	<i>ĕ</i> " " get.
<i>ī</i> as " wine.	<i>ĭ</i> " " fin.
<i>ō</i> " " note.	<i>ŏ</i> " " hot.
<i>ū</i> " " tube.	<i>ŭ</i> " " cub.

Diphthongs: *ae* and *oe* like *e*.

*au* like *au* in aught.

*eu* " *ew* " pewter.

Consonants: *c* is like *s*, and *g* like *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, *oe*, *eu*.

Otherwise they are hard, as *c* in come, and *g* in get.

*ch* is always hard.

*t* before *i* has sound of *sh*.

**6. Syllables.** — A word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs.

A single consonant between two vowels belongs in pronunciation with the latter.

When two words are component parts of a compound, these parts must be indicated in pronunciation; as, *ab-sum*.

NOTE. — The last syllable is called the *ultima*; the next to the last, *penult*; and the last but two, *antepenult*.

**7. Quantity.** — 1. A vowel is short when it stands before another vowel or *h*, also before *nd* and *nt*; *nihil*, *vīa*, *laudānt*, *laudāndus*.

2. The following are long: —

*a.* Diphthongs and vowels taking the place of diphthongs; *accūsō* (*causa*), *exclūdō* (*claudō*).



b. Vowels formed as a result of contraction; *mō-mentum* (*movimentum*).

c. Vowels before *nf* and *ns* and *j* (the *i* consonant) — *īnfēnsus* pronounced *eenfanesus*; before *gn*, *gm* — as *māgnus*, *āgmen*; sometimes before *nc* and *nq* — *sānctus*, *quīnque*.

3. *Syllables* which have long vowels are long; *syllables* which have vowels followed by two consonants (except a *mute* with *l* or *r*), or a double consonant (*x* or *z*), are long.

*Remember* the vowel, if short in itself, does not change its pronunciation, though the syllable is considered long.

A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by a mute with *l* or *r* is common; *i.e.* it may be long or short.

8. **Accent.** — Words of two syllables are accented on the first.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult when that is long, otherwise on the antepenult.

*Enclitics.* — Some small words, such as *que* = and, *ne*, the sign of a question, are joined to other words. The accent then falls upon the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic.

## SECTION 1.

### FIRST DECLENSION : SINGULAR.

Learn : —

Nominative and Vocative	} cases,	Mēns a	a table.
Genitive case,		Mēns ae	of a table (or) a table's.
Dative case,		Mēns ae	to (or) for a table.
Accusative case,		Mēns am	a table.
Ablative case,		Mēns ā	with, from, etc., a table. <sup>1</sup>

Write down in the same way : —

vīta, life. fenestra, a window. colōnia, the colony.

## SECTION 2.

### THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

We say in English “I strike *him*,” not “I strike *he*,” and “He strikes *me*,” not “He strikes *I*”; for in these sentences the persons who strike are put in the nominative, and the persons whom they strike in the accusative. But very few words in English as it is spoken

<sup>1</sup> The ablative case may be translated by *from*, *by*, *with*, *in*, or *at*. It is very often found with prepositions.



and written nowadays,<sup>1</sup> have an accusative case different from the nominative. We say, for instance, "The stone struck me" and "I struck the stone," and the word "stone" is not altered as "me" is to "I." In Latin, on the other hand, most words have an accusative case different from the nominative, and great care must be taken to use the accusative when the noun in English follows the verb. In such a sentence, therefore, as "He strikes the table," *the table* would be "mēnsam."

*Obs.* In putting the Latin sentences into English an *a* or *a the* will have often to be added, whichever of the two seems the more suitable.

For the words see the Dictionaries at the end.

[1.] 1. Puella Jūliam laudat. 2. Jūlia puellam laudat. 3. Cornēlia mēnsam ōrnat. 4. Cornēlia Jūliam amat. 5. Puella Cornēliam amat. 6. Jūlia rosam laudat. 7. Puella Jūliam amat. 8. Cornēlia rosam laudat. 9. Puella mēnsam laudat. 10. Jūlia Cornēliam ōrnat. 11. Cornēlia puellam laudat. 12. Jūlia Cornēliam amat.

[2.] 1. Cornelia praises Julia. 2. Julia praises Cornelia. 3. Cornelia loves the girl. 4. The girl praises the rose. 5. Julia praises the table. 6. Julia loves the girl. 7. Cornelia praises the table. 8. Julia decorates the table.

<sup>1</sup> English used to be more like Latin in this respect; for instance, "tunge" (now "tongue") used to have an accusative "tungan."

## SECTION 3.

FIRST DECLENSION : SINGULAR — (*Continued*).

Other cases than the accusative.

[3.] 1. Puella mēnsam rēgīnae ōrnat. 2. Jūlia Cornēliae mēnsam dat. 3. Puella rēgīnam semper laudat. 4. Puella Jūliae rosam saepe dat. 5. Cornēlia puellae epistulam dat. 6. Cornēlia mēnsam Jūliae ōrnat. 7. Rēgīna epistulam puellae laudat. 8. Rēgīna puellae epistulam dat. 9. Puellae Cornēliae epistulam dat. 10. Cornēlia! puella mēnsam semper ōrnat. 11. Puella rēgīnae Ītalīae mēnsam dat. 12. Jūlia semper, Cornēlia saepe, puellam laudat.

[4.] 1. The Queen of Italy praises the girl. 2. Julia always praises the girl's letter. 3. The girl gives a letter to the queen. 4. Cornelia always praises the girl. 5. The girl decorates the table with a rose. 6. The queen often gives a rose to the girl. 7. Julia! the queen gives a letter to the girl. 8. The girl often decorates the table of the queen.

## SECTION 4.

## FIRST DECLENSION : PLURAL.

Learn : —

Nom. and Voc.	}	Mēns <b>ae</b>	<i>tables.</i>
Gen.		Mēns <b>ārum</b>	<i>of tables.</i>
Dat.		Mēns <b>īs</b>	<i>to (or) for tables.</i>
Acc.		Mēns <b>ās</b>	<i>tables.</i>
Abl.		Mēns <b>īs</b>	<i>with, from, etc., tables.</i>

[5.] 1. Puellae mēnsam rēgīnae ōrnant. 2. Puella mēnsās rēgīnae ōrnat. 3. Rēgīnae puellam semper laudant. 4. Puella mēnsam rēgīnae rosīs ōrnat. 5. Jūlia epistulās rēgīnārum saepe habet. 6. Rēgīna epistulam puellārum laudat. 7. Puellae rēgīnam Ītaliae amant. 8. Puellae rosīs semper mēnsam rēgīnae ōrnant. 9. Rēgīna semper rosās puellae habet. 10. Puellae epistulās rēgīnārum habent. 11. Rēgīna puellae mēnsam dat. 12. Puellae rēgīnae saepe rosās dant. 13. Rēgīna hodiē puellās saepe laudat. 14. Puella rēgīnae semper epistulās dat. 15. Rēgīna puellam, puella rēgīnam, amat. 16. Rēgīna puellis mēnsās dat. 17. Puellae Jūliae epistulam dant. 18. Rēgīna Jūliae rosam, Cornēliae mēnsam, dat.

[6.] 1. The girls have roses to-day. 2. Julia loves the girls. 3. The girl has a table. 4. Cornelia praises the girls to-day. 5. The girls decorate the tables to-day. 6. Julia always has roses. 7. The girl often decorates the tables. 8. Julia praises the girl to-day. 9. The girls often decorate the table. 10. Cornelia always praises the roses.

[7.] 1. The queen often praises the girl's letters. 2. The girls praise the roses of Italy. 3. Julia has the girl's letter to-day. 4. The girls decorate the queen's table with roses. 5. Cornelia always praises the letters of the girls. 6. The Queen of Italy has the girl's letter. 7. Julia praises the queen's letter to-day. 8. Julia gives letters to the girls. 9. The girls give a letter to Julia. 10. The Queen of Italy gives roses to the girls. 11. Julia gives roses to the girl. 12. The girl decorates Julia's table with the roses.

## SECTION 5.

## SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN -us.

The greater number of masculine nouns of the second declension end in the nominative singular in -us, and are declined like: —

## SINGULAR.

Nom.	}	Domin <b>us</b> , <b>ě</b>	<i>a master.</i>
and			
Voc.			
Gen.		Domin <b>ī</b>	<i>of a master or a master's.</i>
Dat.		Domin <b>ō</b>	<i>to (or) for a master.</i>
Acc.		Domin <b>um</b>	<i>a master.</i>
Abl.		Domin <b>ō</b>	<i>with, from, etc., a master.<sup>1</sup></i>

## PLURAL.

Nom.	}	Domin <b>ī</b>	<i>masters.</i>
and			
Voc.			
Gen.		Domin <b>ōrum</b>	<i>of masters.</i>
Dat.		Domin <b>īs</b>	<i>to (or) for masters.</i>
Acc.		Domin <b>ōs</b>	<i>masters.</i>
Abl.		Domin <b>īs</b>	<i>with, from, etc., masters.<sup>1</sup></i>

The Latin for "O Master!" or "Master!" is *Domine*. *Domine* is called the Vocative Case. In all other nouns but those in -us of this declension the Vocative is the same as the Nominative Case.

<sup>1</sup> As dominus refers to a person, a preposition is used with the ablative case to express these relations, hence, *with the master* is cum dominō, and *from or by the master* is ā dominō.

*Obs.* In putting the Latin sentences into English a *his*, *her*, or *their* will have sometimes to be added. It follows that, in turning the English sentences into Latin, these words (for the present put in *italics*) should be passed over.

[8.] 1. Dominus servum laudat. 2. Servī dominum amant. 3. Dominī amīcōs laudant. 4. Mārcus servōs videt. 5. Dominus rēgīnam saepe videt. 6. Dominī servōs saepe laudant. 7. Mārcus Jūliam amat. 8. Amīcī Mārcum vident. 9. Domine! rēgīna servōs laudat. 10. Mārcus hodiē amīcum laudat. 11. Dominus servīs epistulam dat. 12. Rēgīna epistulam servī laudat. 13. Servī mēnsam dominī ōrnant. 14. Jūlia servō rosam dat. 15. Servī dominīs epistulās dant. 16. Servī! dominus epistulam habet. 17. Puella amīcīs rosās dat. 18. Rēgīna Mārcō mēnsam dat. 19. Amīcī epistulam dominī habent. 20. Rēgīna Cornēliae epistulam puellae dat.

[9.] 1. The slaves praise *their*<sup>1</sup> master. 2. The masters praise *their* slaves. 3. The slave has a friend. 4. Marcus praises *his* slave to-day. 5. Julia praises the slaves. 6. The slave praises the girls. 7. The girls decorate the queen's table with roses. 8. The slaves often praise *their* master. 9. Marcus praises the Queen of Italy. 10. The slaves see *their* master.

[10.] 1. The queen gives letters to *her* slaves. 2. Julia has *her* friend's letter. 3. The queens praise Marcus's letter. 4. The slaves have the letters of *their*

<sup>1</sup> Words in *italics* are left out in translation into Latin.



masters. 5. Marcus often praises *his* slaves. 6. The slave gives a rose to *his* master. 7. The slaves give *their* master a letter to-day. 8. The master praises the letters of *his* slaves. 9. The queen sees the girl's letter. 10. The slaves often see *their* master.

## SECTION 6.

## SECOND DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS.

The neuter nouns of the second declension end in *-um*; and, like all neuter nouns, they have the nominative and accusative cases, both in the singular and plural, alike:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
Nom.	} Bell <b>um</b>	<i>war.</i>	Bell <b>a</b>	<i>wars.</i>
and Voc.				
Gen.	Bell <b>ī</b>	<i>of war.</i>	Bell <b>ōrum</b>	<i>of wars.</i>
Dat.	Bell <b>ō</b>	<i>to war.</i>	Bell <b>īs</b>	<i>to wars.</i>
Acc.	Bell <b>um</b>	<i>war.</i>	Bell <b>a</b>	<i>wars.</i>
Abl.	Bell <b>ō</b>	<i>by war.</i>	Bell <b>īs</b>	<i>by wars.</i>

[11.] 1. Praemium dominī servōs dēlectat. 2. Servī arma dominōrum habent. 3. Dominus servō praemium dat. 4. Bellum Germānōs dēlectat. 5. Jūlia et Cornēlia rosās semper habent. 6. Mārcus dīligentiam servōrum saepe laudat. 7. Bellum dominum et servum dēlectat. 8. Germānī dīligentiam amant et laudant. 9. Dominī servīs praemium dant. 10. Servī mēnsam dominī hodiē ōrnant. 11. Rēgīna dīligentiam Jūliae

et Cornēliae laudat. 12. Puella arma Mārcī videt et laudat.

[12.] 1. War pleases the slaves. 2. The reward of the queen pleases the girls. 3. The Germans love arms. 4. The queen praises the diligence of the slave. 5. Marcus loves and praises war. 6. The arms of Marcus please *his* friend. 7. The queen gives rewards to the girl. 8. The slaves have *their* master's arms. 9. The letters of *their* slaves please the masters. 10. The lord gives rewards to *his* slaves to-day.

## SECTION 7.

SECOND DECLENSION — (*Continued*): ADJECTIVES IN  
-us -a -um, SINGULAR.

These adjectives are thus declined in the singular : —

	MASCULINE. (like <i>Dominus</i> .)	FEMININE. (like <i>Mēnsa</i> .)	NEUTER. (like <i>Bellum</i> .)
Nom. } and Voc. }	Bon <b>us</b> , <b>ě</b>	bon <b>a</b>	bon <b>um</b> .
Gen.	Bon <b>ī</b>	bon <b>ae</b>	bon <b>ī</b> .
Dat.	Bon <b>ō</b>	bon <b>ae</b>	bon <b>ō</b> .
Acc.	Bon <b>um</b>	bon <b>am</b>	bon <b>um</b> .
Abl.	Bon <b>ō</b>	bon <b>ā</b>	bon <b>ō</b> .

Adjectives must be put in the same gender and the same case of the singular or plural as the nouns with which they go.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
N. } & } V. }	Domin <b>us</b> bon <b>us</b> - <b>ě</b> - <b>ě</b>	mēns <b>a</b> long <b>a</b>	bell <b>um</b> long <b>um</b> .
G.	Domin <b>ī</b> bon <b>ī</b>	mēns <b>ae</b> long <b>ae</b>	bell <b>ī</b> long <b>ī</b> .
D.	Domin <b>ō</b> bon <b>ō</b>	mēns <b>ae</b> long <b>ae</b>	bell <b>ō</b> long <b>ō</b> .
Ac.	Domin <b>um</b> bon <b>um</b>	mēns <b>am</b> long <b>am</b>	bell <b>um</b> long <b>um</b> .
Ab.	Domin <b>ō</b> bon <b>ō</b>	mēns <b>ā</b> long <b>ā</b>	bell <b>ō</b> long <b>ō</b> .

[13.] 1. Amīcus meus amīcum tuum hodiē laudat. 2. Mārcus servum tuum saepe videt. 3. Dominus dīligentiam fidī servī semper laudat. 4. Rēgīna Mārcō, amīcō tuō, servum dat. 5. Rēgīna dīligentiam bonae puellae laudat. 6. Servus dominō epistulam meam dat. 7. Rēgīna puellae fīdae praemium dat. 8. Mārcus longam amīcī epistulam habet. 9. Amīcī praemium meum vident. 10. Longa epistula rēgīnam dēlectat. 11. Mārcus, amīcus meus, puellam amat. 12. Rēgīna servō meō praemium dīligentiae dat.

[14.] 1. Marcus praises the diligence of your slave to-day. 2. The master gives a reward to *his* good slave. 3. The good master praises the diligence of *his* slaves. 4. The queen gives a rose to my friend. 5. The master often praises *his* faithful slave. 6. The slaves see *their* master's long letter. 7. Marcus and Julia see my letter. 8. The queen praises the good girl. 9. The slaves decorate the queen's table with roses. 10. A long war delights the Germans.

[15.] 1. The slaves are decorating *their* master's table with roses. 2. The girl has my rose. 3. The girls have the arms. 4. My friend praises my diligence. 5. Marcus gives the letter to *his* faithful friend.



6. The girl often sees the faithful slave. 7. Marcus praises my master. 8. Julia loves my friend Marcus. 9. The queen praises the diligence of your friend. 10. Master! your slaves have the letter.

## SECTION 8.

SECOND DECLENSION — (*Continued*) : ADJECTIVES IN  
-us, PLURAL.

These adjectives are thus declined in the plural : —

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Nom. and Voc. }	Bon <b>ī</b>	bon <b>ae</b>	bon <b>a</b> .
Gen.	Bon <b>ōrum</b>	bon <b>ārum</b>	bon <b>ōrum</b>
Dat.	Bon <b>īs</b>	bon <b>īs</b>	bon <b>īs</b> .
Acc.	Bon <b>ōs</b>	bon <b>ās</b>	bon <b>a</b> .
Abl.	Bon <b>īs</b>	bon <b>īs</b>	bon <b>īs</b> .

- [16.] 1. Dominus multōs et bonōs servōs habet. 2. Bonī servī multōs amīcōs semper habent. 3. Rēgīna dīligentiam amīcōrum meōrum laudat. 4. Dominus fīdīs servīs praemia dat. 5. Bonae puellae arma tua hodiē habent. 6. Germānī multa arma habent. 7. Puellae mēnsās tuās, rēgīna, ōrnant! 8. Dominus dīligentiam bonōrum servōrum laudat. 9. Puellae mēnsam longam multīs rosīs ōrnant. 10. Multī dominī dīligentiam servōrum laudant. 11. Longae epistulae puellam dēlectant. 12. Amīcī meī puellīs multa prae-mia dant. 13. Dominus epistulās servōrum fīdōrum habet. 14. Rēgīna epistulam bonārum puellārum laudat. 15. Rēgīnae bonae fīdīs puellīs multās rosās dant.

[17.] 1. Marcus often sees my friends. 2. The master gives rewards to *his* good slaves. 3. Slaves always love good masters. 4. The girls give your roses to the queen. 5. Julia praises the diligence of the good girls. 6. Julia! the girl has your and my letters. 7. The good girls adorn Julia with many roses. 8. The girl gives many letters to the queen.

[18.] 1. The queen gives many rewards to the girl. 2. The girl loves the good queens. 3. Your friend gives many roses to the girl. 4. The good queen praises the diligence of my friends. 5. *His* friend gives your arms to Marcus. 6. The good queen always loves good girls. 7. The Germans praise long wars. 8. The girl gives my letters to Julia. 9. My slave gives a long letter to Marcus. 10. Marcus to-day has many rewards.

## SECTION 9.

SECOND DECLENSION — (*Continued*) : NOUNS IN *-er*.

To the second declension belong also many nouns and adjectives ending in *-er*. Most of these drop the *e* in the other cases:—

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	} Magister	magistr <i>ī</i> .
and		
Voc.		
Gen.	Magistr <i>ī</i>	magistr <i>ōrum</i> .
Dat.	Magistr <i>ō</i>	magistr <i>īs</i> .
Acc.	Magistr <i>um</i>	magistr <i>ōs</i> .
Abl.	Magistr <i>ō</i>	magistr <i>īs</i> .

A few, however, keep the *e* throughout : —

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom. } and Voc. }	Puer	puer <b>ī</b> .
Gen.	Puer <b>ī</b>	puer <b>ōrum</b> .
Dat.	Puer <b>ō</b>	puer <b>īs</b> .
Acc.	Puer <b>um</b>	puer <b>ōs</b> .
Abl.	Puer <b>ō</b>	puer <b>īs</b> .

*Vir* is declined like *puer*.

[19.] 1. *Māgister puerīs bonīs librōs dat.* 2. *Dominus miser epistulam servōrum videt.* 3. *Rēgīna puellam pulchram amat.* 4. *Puella mēnsam rosīs pulchrīs ōrnet.* 5. *Rēgīna librōs puellārum pulchrārum laudat.* 6. *Puellae bonae puerīs miserīs rosās dant.* 7. *Puella rēgīnae miserae rosās pulchrās dat.* 8. *Multī puerī magistrīs epistulās longās dant.* 9. *Rēgīna puellae miserae librōs bonōs dat.* 10. *Bonī virī rēgīnam miseram amant.* 11. *Puer puellae rosam pulchram saepe dat.* 12. *Librī puerōs miserōs hodiē dēlectant.*

[20.] 1. The boys see the books of *their* masters. 2. The master praises the diligence of the boys. 3. The good man gives a table to *his* slave. 4. The good lord praises the arms of the faithful slave. 5. The boy gives my books to *his* master. 6. The master gives good books to *his* boys. 7. Your friend sees the queen's unhappy slaves. 8. The good slave sees *his* master's letters.

[21.] 1. The good man always praises the unhappy queen. 2. The unhappy man loves the beautiful girl. 3. The good girl often gives books to the unhappy

queen. 4. The queen praises the girl's beautiful books. 5. The slaves praise the beautiful table of *their* masters. 6. The unhappy girl loves the good queen. 7. The queen often gives beautiful roses to the unhappy girl. 8. The good girls love the unhappy queen. 9. The masters give many letters to *their* slaves. 10. The queen always praises the good girl's diligence.

## SECTION 10.

Est — Sunt.

Est, *is*; sunt, *are*.

The Latin for "Julia is queen" is *Jūlia est rēgīna* (not *rēgīnam*). The rule that the accusative is to be put after the verb does not apply to the verb "to be."

It is not right to say in English, "It is *me*," and "It is *him*," but "It is *I*," and "It is *he*." So in Latin, *est Jūlia* (not *Jūliam*) will stand for "It is Julia."

Be careful, too, to notice that the adjective has to agree with its noun none the less because *est* or *sunt* comes between them. So the Latin for "the rose is beautiful" is *rosa est pulchra*.

[22.] 1. Puer est miser. 2. Epistula est longa. 3. Puellae sunt pulchrae. 4. Arma pulchra sunt. 5. Vir bonus nōn est miser. 6. Librī amīcō meō grātī sunt. 7. Mēnsa magistrī plēna librōrum est. 8. Magister Jūliam laudat, Cornēliam culpat. 9. Hortī pulchrī puerīs et puellīs grātī sunt. 10. Epistula rēgīnae bonīs puellīs grāta est. 11. Hortus rēgīnae semper

plēnus rosārum est. 12. Magister pigrōs puerōs culpāt, impigrōs laudat. 13. Magister puerīs praemium nōn dat; nōn sunt bonī. 14. Longa Mārci epistula puellae miserae grāta est. 15. Puerī sunt miserī: magister dīligentiam nōn laudat. 16. Magister puerōs culpāt; semper sunt pigrī.

[23.] 1. The letter is welcome. 2. The garden is beautiful. 3. The slaves are faithful. 4. Italy is beautiful. 5. The table is full. 6. The roses are beautiful. 7. The slaves are active. 8. The boy is active. 9. He is a good man. 10. The slaves of Marcus are faithful.

[24.] 1. The master is a good man. 2. Julia is queen of Italy. 3. The queen blames the lazy girls. 4. The lord's garden is full of roses. 5. A good man praises diligence. 6. Books are often the rewards of diligence. 7. Balbus is often a lazy boy. 8. The lord always blames the lazy slave. 9. The lord blames *his* slaves; they are not faithful. 10. Marcus is my friend, not yours. 11. The boy praises my friends and yours. 12. Your lord is a friend of the queen's. 13. Girls are not always beautiful. 14. Books are not always welcome to boys.

I. *A Letter of a Father to his Boy at School.*

(Words on p. 177.)

Epistula magistrī tuī, Balbe, grāta et jūcunda mihi fuit. Nam dīligentiam tuam laudat, et scrībit: "Fīlius tuus bonus puer et industrius est." Māter tibi pulchrum librum, praemium dīligentiae tuae, mittit.



Soror tua hodiē sex annōs habet. Cotīdiē mē rogat :  
 “Quandō, pater, revertet frāter ?” Valē!

## II. *Romulus and Remus.*

(Words on p. 177.)

Dum Rōmulus mūrōs Rōmae multā dīligentiā aedificat, Remus, frāter, puer piger et improbus, parvōs adhūc mūrōs saepe trānsilit. Verbīs contumēliōsīs, Rōmulum compellat. “Cārissime frāter, quam māgnificī sunt mūrī tuī! inimicōs tuōs ēgrediē arcent!” Rōmulus, autem, plēnus īrae, Remum occīdit. Tum fēliciter mūrōs cōnficit.

## III. *The Black Slave.*

(Words on p. 178.)

Agrippa nigrum servum habēbat. Puerī, autem, miserum servum in platēis rīdent. “Ēn,” clāmant, “quam niger est! Serve, nēmō tē lavat?” Dominus, tamen, vir bonus et validus, improbōs puerōs audit. Plēnus īrae puerōs capillō arripit. Frūstrā clāmant; frūstrā lacrimās fundunt. Cūctōs sine morā in ātrāmentum dēmergit.

## SECTION 11.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

The case-endings for masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	—	-ēs.
Gen.	-is	-um.
Dat.	-ī	-ibus.
Acc.	-em	-ēs.
Abl.	-e	-ibus.

Some nouns, *soror*, *clāmor*, *mulier*, for instance, are declined by adding these endings to the nominative singular. *Soror* therefore is declined: —

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	} Soror	sorōr ēs.
and		
Voc.	} Sorōr	sorōr
Gen.		
Dat.		
Acc.		
Abl.		
	is	um.
	ī	ibus.
	em	ēs.
	e	ibus.

[25.] 1. Puerī puellās clāmōre terrent. 2. Puer puellam clāmōribus terret. 3. Puer bonus ā sorōre laudātur. 4. Mulier rēgīnae multās epistulās dat. 5. Puer mulierem clāmōribus terret. 6. Servī fidī hodiē ā dominīs laudantur. 7. Vir bonus mulieribus librōs dat. 8. Amīcus meus sorōrem Jūliae saepe videt. 9. Magister puerō librum, praemium dīligentiae, dat. 10. Balbus ā Jūliā, Mārcus ā Cornēliā, amātur. 11. Puerī ā sorōre semper laudantur. 12. Puerōs pigrōs magister semper culpat. 13. Vir bonus mulierem nunquam terret. 14. Puer sorōrī librum, soror puerō arma, dat. 15. Puerī sunt pigrī; nunquam praemia habent.

[26.] 1. The boys love *their* sisters. 2. The boy

blames *his* sister to-day. 3. *His* sister often blames the boy. 4. Marcus has the books of the slaves. 5. The shouting of the boys frightens the girls. 6. The shouts of the girls frighten the queen. 7. The queen never praises the woman's letter. 8. Marcus gives a book to the woman. 9. Julia has the women's roses. 10. The boy gives a rose to *his* sisters.

[27.] 1. Julia's sisters give a book to the boy. 2. Julia praises *her* sister's diligence. 3. Wars frighten women. 4. Cornelia never gives a reward to *her* sister. 5. The sailors' shouting frightens the queen. 6. The boys' sisters have the roses. 7. The queen praises the diligence of *her* sisters. 8. The boy gives the books to *his* sister. 9. The lord frightens *his* lazy slaves. 10. *His* sister praises the unhappy boy. 11. The master always blames the shouting. 12. The boy sees *his* sister in the garden. 13. The shouts of the boys frighten the women. 14. The women praise the roses of your garden. 15. Balbus loves the sister of the beautiful Julia.

## SECTION 12.

### THIRD DECLENSION — (*Continued*).

The Gender shown by meaning.

The meaning of some words shows their gender: mercātor, a merchant, is masculine; mulier, a woman, is feminine. "A good merchant," and "a good woman," will therefore be declined thus:—



	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. } and Voc. }	Bon <b>us</b> , <b>ě</b> , mercātor	bon <b>ī</b> mercātōr <b>ēs</b> .
Gen.	Bon <b>ī</b> mercātōr <b>is</b>	bon <b>ōrum</b> mercātōr <b>um</b> .
Dat.	Bon <b>ō</b> mercātōr <b>ī</b>	bon <b>īs</b> mercātōr <b>ibus</b> .
Acc.	Bon <b>um</b> mercātōr <b>em</b>	bon <b>ōs</b> mercātōr <b>ēs</b> .
Abl.	Bon <b>ō</b> mercātōr <b>e</b>	bon <b>īs</b> mercātōr <b>ibus</b> .

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. } and Voc. }	Bon <b>a</b> mulier	bon <b>ae</b> mulier <b>ēs</b> .
Gen.	Bon <b>ae</b> mulier <b>is</b>	bon <b>ārum</b> mulier <b>um</b> .
Dat.	Bon <b>ae</b> mulier <b>ī</b>	bon <b>īs</b> mulier <b>ibus</b> .
Acc.	Bon <b>am</b> mulier <b>em</b>	bon <b>ās</b> mulier <b>ēs</b> .
Abl.	Bon <b>ā</b> mulier <b>e</b>	bon <b>īs</b> mulier <b>ibus</b> .

“By,” before a word denoting a person, must be translated by the preposition *ā* (*ab* always before a vowel, and often before consonants), followed by the ablative: otherwise the ablative by itself is enough. So:—

Rēgīna ā bonō mercātōre laudātur.

*The queen is praised by the good merchant.*

Rēgīna clāmōribus puerōrum terrētur.

*The queen is frightened by the shouts of the boys.*

[28.] 1. Alexander sorōrī tuae rosam nunquam dat. 2. Multī ōrātōrēs rēgīnam semper laudant. 3. Puer librōs clārōrum ōrātōrum hodiē laudat. 4. Mercātor Germānus rēgīnae vīnum dat. 5. Rēgīna ā multīs ōrātōribus laudātur. 6. Mārcus sorōrem meam amat et saepe laudat. 7. Magister dīligentiam sorōrum meārum laudat. 8. Rēgīna bonīs mulieribus pecūniam

cotīdiē dat. 9. Balbus dīligentiam mājōrum meōrum saepe laudat. 10. Mārcus, vir bonus, miserīs servīs pecūniam dat. 11. Clāmōrēs puerōrum miserās mulierēs terrent. 12. Bella Alexandrī clāra sunt. 13. Servus dominō vīnum cotīdiē dat. 14. Servī meī Balbum et Mārcum cotīdiē vident. 15. Mercātōribus bella nōn semper grāta sunt.

[29.] 1. Alexander has many sisters. 2. The queen is praised by my sisters. 3. The lord gives money to the active merchant. 4. The poet praises the queen's beautiful sisters. 5. The poet gives *his* book to the celebrated orator. 6. The celebrated orator praises *his* ancestors. 7. Your ancestors are praised by the orator. 8. The good merchants give rewards to the sailors. 9. The orator praises the gardens of Italy. 10. The boy praises the long books of the orators.

[30.] 1. The queen praises the faithful women. 2. The faithful women are praised by the queen. 3. The lord praises the merchant's wine. 4. The queen often praises the diligence of the German merchants. 5. The boy loves *his* sister, and is praised by *his* sister. 6. The merchant's gardens are full of beautiful roses to-day. 7. The girl praises the diligence of the active women. 8. The boy often has your sister's books. 9. The queen praises the diligence of the merchants every day. 10. The slaves give the letters to the merchant every day. 11. The good merchant gives money to the orators. 12. The queen gives wine to the poet, money to the orator.

IV. *A Fable.*

(Words on p. 178.)

Societātem jungunt leō, equus, capra, ovis. Multam praedam capiunt, et in ūnum locum comportant. Tum in quattuor partēs praedam dīvidunt. Leō, autem, “Prīma pars,” inquit, “mea est; nam leō rēx animālium est. Et mea est pars secunda, propter māgnōs meōs labōrēs. Tertiam partem vindicō, quoniam mājor mihi quam vōbīs, animālibus imbēcillīs et parvīs, famēs est. Quartam, dēnique, partem si quis sibi arrogat, mihi inimīcus erit.”

## SECTION 13.

THIRD DECLENSION — (*Continued*): THE STEM.

The nouns of the third declension which have been given so far have been declined by adding the case-endings to the nominative singular. But in order to decline the greater number of nouns of this declension it is necessary to know another case as well. *Rēx*, a king, for instance, is thus declined: —

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. } and Voc. }	Rēx	rēgēs.
Gen.	Rēgis	rēgum.
Dat.	Rēgī	rēgibus.
Acc.	Rēgem	rēgēs.
Abl.	Rēge	rēgibus.

It is not to *rēx*, but to *rēg-*, that the case-endings are added.

[31.] 1. Rēgīna dīligentiam mīlitum semper laudat. 2. Soror parvō frātrī bonum librum dat. 3. Frātrēs praemiīs rēgis et rēgīnae contentī sunt. 4. Rēx mīlitibus hodiē nōn est contentus. 5. Rēgīna frātrem et sorōrem in hortō videt. 6. Rēgēs mercātōribus māgnam pecūniam saepe dant. 7. Rēx Germānus multōs frātrēs et multās sorōrēs habet. 8. Hortī rēgum māgnī et plēnī hodiē rosārum sunt. 9. Rēgīna mīlitibus māgnam pecūniam saepe dat. 10. Magister saepe frātrem culpat, sorōrem semper laudat. 11. Mīlitēs praemiīs rēgīnae nunquam contentī sunt. 12. Rēx nau-tīs et mīlitibus multa saepe praemia dat. 13. Magister mē culpat, tē laudat. 14. Clāmōrēs mīlitum mē saepe terrent. 15. Rēgēs fīdīs mīlitibus māgna praemia dant. 16. Mārcus fīdus rēgum amīcus semper est. 17. Frātrēs tuī miserī sunt: nunquam ā magistrō laudantur. 18. Rēgīna frātribus meīs, Mārcō et Alexandrō, multōs librōs dat. 19. Tē, amīce, magistrī nunquam laudant, mē semper! 20. Frāter meus clārus est: semper ā mīlitibus laudātur.

[32.] 1. Wars do not frighten the soldier. 2. The girl is praised by the soldier. 3. The soldiers frighten the girl by *their* shouts. 4. Julia is never praised by my brother. 5. The slaves gave *their* lord's letters to the king. 6. The orators *are* always praising kings and queens. 7. The soldiers give a rose to the women. 8. The shouts of the common people frighten the king. 9. Your sisters see my brother every day. 10. The good king praises the beautiful queen.

[33.] 1. War is welcome to the soldiers. 2. *Their* sisters are always loved by *their* brothers. 3. My brothers are always active. 4. The merchants give good wine to the kings. 5. The king gives a large sum of money to the orators. 6. The brothers frighten *their* sisters by *their* shouts. 7. O queen, the poets always praise you! 8. My sisters love me, your sisters love you. 9. The brother gives many roses to *his* sister. 10. The king, a good man, gives the orators' books to the active boys. 11. To good kings books are always welcome. 12. The soldiers are praised by the good king.

## SECTION 14.

## THIRD DECLENSION: GENITIVE PLURAL.

Some nouns form their genitive plural, not in *-um*, but in *-ium*.

The general rule is that nouns whose genitive singular has more syllables than the nominative singular take *-um*; nouns which have the same number of syllables in these cases take *-ium*.

NOM. SING.	GEN. SING.	GEN. PLURAL.
1. Miles	mīlit <b>is</b>	mīlit <b>um</b> .
Rēx	rēg <b>is</b>	rēg <b>um</b> .
Ōrātor	ōrātōr <b>is</b>	ōrātōr <b>um</b> .
2. Host <b>is</b>	host <b>is</b>	host <b>ium</b> .
Cīv <b>is</b>	cīv <b>is</b>	cīv <b>ium</b> .
Nāv <b>is</b>	nāv <b>is</b>	nāv <b>ium</b> .



[34.] 1. Clāmōrēs hostium mulierēs saepe terrent. 2. Rēgīna librōs ōrātōrum saepe laudat. 3. Ōrātor dīligentiam cīvium Germānōrum laudat. 4. Mīlītēs nāvibus hostium nōn terrentur. 5. Rēx rēgīnae epistulās sorōrum dat. 6. Hostēs parvīs cōpiīs agrōs vastant. 7. Epistula hostium rēgī nōn grāta est. 8. Hostēs prōrās nāvium rēgum vident. 9. Rēgem, virum bonum, hostium clāmōrēs nōn terrent. 10. Rēx numerō nāvium contentus est. 11. Mē clāmōrēs hostium nunquam terrent. 12. Rēgīna hostium agrōs rēgis vastat.

[35.] 1. The king praises the diligence of the citizens. 2. The soldiers see the prows of the ships. 3. The brother praises the garden of his<sup>1</sup> sisters. 4. The slave sees the forces of the enemy. 5. The sailors decorate the prows of their<sup>1</sup> ships with roses. 6. The forces of the enemy do not frighten the king. 7. The slaves see the ships of the merchant. 8. The citizens lay waste the lands of the enemy. 9. Julia has a large number of sisters. 10. The king is satisfied with the diligence of the citizens.

[36.] 1. The king sees the enemy's ships. 2. The slaves of my sisters are faithful. 3. The king is loved by his citizens. 4. The enemy see a large number of ships. 5. The shouts of the soldiers frighten the forces of the enemy. 6. The forces of the enemy frighten the unhappy citizens. 7. The king praises the diligence of his ancestors. 8. The boy sees the rewards of the active girls. 9. The ships of the

<sup>1</sup> *His, her, and their* are no longer printed in *italics*, but are still to be left out in Latin.



enemy are praised by the king. 10. To the king of the enemy the war is welcome. 11. The king is satisfied to-day with the diligence of the soldiers. 12. The soldiers of the enemy frighten the citizens with their shouts.

## SECTION 15.

THIRD DECLENSION: GENITIVE PLURAL — (*Continued*).

Some nouns, however, although they have the same number of syllables in all the cases of the singular, make their genitive plural in *-um*: so do:—

pater, māter, frāter,  
juvenis, and senex.

And others again, which have more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative singular, make their genitive plural in *-ium*. Among these are:—

(a) A number of words, mostly of one syllable, ending in an “s” following a consonant. What, then, is the genitive plural of — ar **s**, art**is** (art), par**s**, part**is** (part), mēn**s**, ment**is** (mind), frōn**s**, front**is** (front).

(b) Nox, os, vīs, make — noct**ium**, oss**ium**, vīr**ium**.

and also some nouns in Section 17.

[37.] 1. Puellae epistulās mātrum habent. 2. Senēs dīligentiam mājōrum saepe laudant. 3. Cōpiaie rēgiae agrōs hostium vastant. 4. Senum pars rēgem, pars rēgīnam, culpat. 5. Servī nāvium rēgiārū partem vident. 6. Juvenum pars laudat, pars culpat poētā.

7. Puellae saepe librīs mātrum nōn sunt contentae.
8. Cōpiaē hostium partem agrōrum rēgiōrum vastant.
9. Clāmōrēs mulierum cōpiās rēgiās nōn terrent.
10. Verba tua mē hodiē nōn terrent, ōrātor!
11. Clāmōrēs hostium miserārum animōs mātrum terrent.
12. Puerōrum partem culpat, partem laudat magister.
13. Parvae hostium cōpiaē animōs militum terrent.
14. Tē, puer piger, magistrī nunquam laudant!
15. Senex servīs bonīs et fidīs pecūniam cotīdiē dat.

[38.] 1. The king praises the diligence of the young men. 2. The words of the orators frighten the citizens. 3. The words of the orators frighten the minds of the citizens. 4. The shouts of the citizens frighten the heart of the queen. 5. The old man blames the young man, the young man the old man. 6. The letters of their mother are welcome to the boys. 7. The words of the old men do not frighten the enemy. 8. The words of the orator are praised by the citizens.

[39.] 1. Wars are never welcome to mothers. 2. The king of the enemy wastes the lands of the citizens with large forces. 3. The diligence of the soldiers is praised by the old men. 4. The forces of the enemy lay waste the broad lands of the merchants. 5. The boys are praised by their fathers, the girls by their mothers. 6. The citizens see the ships of the enemy, and the royal forces. 7. My father blames me, my mother praises *me*.<sup>1</sup> 8. The merchant gives wine to the lord, money to the slave. 9. The royal soldiers are not satisfied with the king's words. 10. The words

<sup>1</sup> Words printed in *italics* are to be left out.

of the old men are not always welcome to the minds of the young men.

### V. *Coriolānus.*

(The words will be found in the Dictionary on p. 179.)

Coriolānus, clārus Rōmānōrum imperātor, plēbī Rōmānae ob superbiam invīsus fuit. Ex urbe igitur expulsus, ad Volscōs, ācerrimōs Rōmānōrum hostēs, contendit. Ab Volscīs dux exercitūs factus, cōpiās Rōmānās saepe vincit. Dēnique ad urbem summīs Volscōrum cōpiīs vēnit. Frūstrā lēgātī ex urbe veniunt, pācem-que implōrant. Postrēmō, Veturia, māter, et Volumnia, uxor, ex urbe veniunt; et, lacrimīs precibus-que mulierum commōtus, exercitum removet. Ab Volscīs, autem, ut prōditor interficitur.

## SECTION 16.

### THIRD DECLENSION: ENDINGS OF NEUTER NOUNS.

Neuter nouns of the third declension have the same endings as other nouns, except that, like all neuter nouns, the nominative and accusative in both numbers are the same, and that these cases in the plural end in *-a*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. and Voc. }	Nōmen	nōmin a.
Gen.	Nōmin is	nōmin um.
Dat.	Nōmin ī	nōmin ibus.
Acc.	Nōmen	nōmin a.
Abl.	Nōmin e	nōmin ibus.

[40.] 1. Rōma caput Ītalīae est. 2. Nōmen amīcī meī Alexander est. 3. Pater et māter puerīs nōmina dant. 4. Poēta rēgīnae pulchrum carmen dat. 5. Mārcus caput parvum, animum māgnū habet. 6. Pulchra poētae carmina saepe laudantur. 7. Senēs tempora antīqua semper laudant. 8. Nōmina librōrum tuōrum amīcō meō nōn sunt nōta. 9. Nōmina poētārum et ōrātōrum magistrō nōta sunt. 10. Patrēs bonī puerīs et puellīs vīnum nunquam dant. 11. Mārcī longum, Balbī māgnū, caput est. 12. Poētae ā tē, ōrātōrēs ā mē, laudantur. 13. Nōmina amīcōrum meōrum Mārcō nōn sunt nōta. 14. Poēta tempora antīqua longō carmine laudat. 15. Juvenis mercātōrī pecūniam tempore dat.

[41.] 1. Marcus praises the poet's songs. 2. Old men praise the times of their ancestors. 3. The girls adorn the queen's head with roses. 4. The girls see the heads of the old men. 5. The heads of the girls are beautiful. 6. The poet's songs are celebrated. 7. The old man blames the times. 8. The boys see your head. 9. The soldiers see the heads of the enemy. 10. The names of the slaves are known to the lords.

[42.] 1. The names of the celebrated poets are known to the citizens. 2. Your name is not known to my mother. 3. The poet praises the queen *in* a beautiful song. 4. The boy has a book full of songs. 5. Marcus's head is long and big. 6. The royal sailors see the ships of the enemy *in* time. 7. The poets praise the queen's beautiful songs. 8. The names of the slaves are known to the merchants.

9. The orator praises a part of the poet's song.  
 10. The boy has a book full of songs. 11. The king is not satisfied with the songs of the royal poet.  
 12. The orator praises the diligence of ancient times.

## SECTION 17.

THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS —  
(*Continued*).

Neuter nouns ending in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar*, make the ablative singular in *-ī*, the nominative plural in *-ia*, and the genitive plural in *-ium*: —

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. and Voc. }	Animal	animālia.
Gen.	Animālis	animālium.
Dat.	Animālī	animālibus.
Acc.	Animal	animālia.
Abl.	Animālī	animālibus.

- [43.] 1. Cīvēs hostibus māgna vectīgālia pendunt.  
 2. Servum in conclāvī tuō cotīdiē videt. 3. Equī calcāribus incitantur. 4. Parva animālia saepe impigra, māgna pigra sunt. 5. Cīvēs rēgī māgnū numerū vectīgāliū pendunt. 6. Praemia saepe calcāria dīligentiae sunt. 7. Rosae in hortō, librī in conclāvī tuō, sunt. 8. Parva animālia māgna saepe capita habent. 9. In conclāvī tuō multī et bonī librī sunt. 10. Equōs calcāribus, mīlitēs praemiīs, incitant. 11. Servī librōs tuōs in sorōris tuae conclāvī vident. 12. Cīvēs ani-



mōs mīlitum clāmōribus incitant. 13. Marcus mercātōrī māgnam pecūniam pendit. 14. Librī bonī puerōrum animōs saepe incitant. 15. Servī partem regiōrum conclāvium vident.

[44.] 1. The enemy pay taxes to the king. 2. The citizens pay part of the taxes to the queen. 3. Small animals are often active. 4. He praises the diligence of the small animals. 5. The girls adorn the queen's rooms with roses. 6. There are many books in your room. 7. The enemy urge on their horses with the spur. 8. The poet urges on the soldiers with his songs. 9. The father gives a horse to the good boy. 10. Your room is full of books. 11. The king is satisfied with a small tax. 12. Balbus urges on my horse with the spur. 13. The rooms of the king are high. 14. The words of the master urge on the lazy boys. 15. The queen has a large number of rooms.

## VI. *Theseus and Ariadne.*

In Crētā īnsulā māgnūm labyrinthū Daedalus aedificāvit, plēnū viārum flexuōsārum. In mediō labyrinthō foedum mōnstrum, taurus partim, partim homō, habitābat. Mōnstrum, autem, rēx Crētae, saevus homō, captivīs sagīnābat. Inter miserandās illās victimās quondam erat Thēseus, rēgulus Atticus. Ariadnē, tamen, fīlia rēgis, plēna misericordiae et amōris, juvenī fīlū longū mīrum-que gladium dat. Intrat, igitur, labyrinthū, fīlū-que ad portam alligat. Itaque juvenis auxiliō fīlī certam viam in vastī aedificiī flexūrīs servat. Tum gladiō mōnstrum fēlī-



citer necat. Nec longa mora fuit. Thēseus cum filiā rēgis nāvī trāns lātum mare fugit. Vesperī, autem, ad Naxum īnsulam veniunt. Mediā, tamen, nocte Thēseus, ingrātus juvenis, puellam fīdam et amantem dēserit; sōlus-que ad patriam redit.

## SECTION 18.

THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER OF NOUNS BY  
TERMINATION.*Masculine.*

General rule:—Nouns which end in *ō*, *or*, *ōs*, *er*, *es* (when the other cases of nouns in *-es* have more syllables than the nominative singular), are masculine.

Decline:—

Sermō facētus	<i>witty conversation.</i>
Māgnus clāmor	<i>a loud shout.</i>
Mōs antīquus	<i>the ancient custom.</i>
Agger altus	<i>a high rampart.</i>
Pēs claudus	<i>a lame foot.</i>

There are many exceptions to this and the following rules — *māter*, *mulier*, *soror*, for instance, are of course feminine.

[45.] 1. Puer māgnōs et longōs pedēs habet. 2. Senēs facētō juvenis sermōne saepe dēlectantur. 3. Parvus est clārōrum ōrātōrum numerus. 4. Senex mōrēs antīquōs et tempora antīqua cotīdiē laudat. 5. Mōrēs tuī, puer, ā magistrīs nōn laudantur! 6. Mār-cus, puer miser, pedibus claudus est. 7. Militēs im-

pigrī equōs semper calcāribus incitant. 8. Māgnī puerōrum clāmōrēs mātrem terrent. 9. Altus hostium agger animōs mīlitum terret. 10. Māgnae hostium cōpiae agrōs rēgiōs vastant. 11. Mārcum et Balbum, amīcōs meōs, in hortīs rēgiīs vident. 12. Multī dominī fīlīs servīs nunquam sunt contentī.

[46.] 1. Witty conversation delights old men. 2. The loud shouts frighten the girls. 3. Balbus has a lame foot. 4. The ramparts of the enemy are long and high. 5. The rampart of the enemy is high. 6. The merchants often give wine to the soldier. 7. The songs of the poets are known to my father. 8. The boy's head *is* small, his feet are big. 9. The citizens pay a part *only* of the taxes to the king. 10. The old man blames the bad manners of the times. 11. The royal soldiers urge on their horses with spurs. 12. The young man charms the old man with his witty conversation. 13. The master's room is full of books. 14. The king fears the loud shouts of the citizens. 15. Small animals often have big feet.

[47.]<sup>1</sup> 1. Multī hominēs carmina nōn amant. 2. Multīs hominibus ōrātōrēs nōn sunt nōtī. 3. Magister Balbī mōrēs laudat, Mārcī culpat. 4. Pulchrī colōrēs flōrum tuōrum ā rēge laudantur. 5. Multī et pulchrī flōrēs in hortīs rēgiīs sunt. 6. Cōpiae hostium castra māgnō aggere circumdant. 7. Mārcus et Balbus pedibus claudī sunt. 8. Verba equitum animōs mīlitum nōn terrent. 9. Frāter tuus longō sermōne nunquam delectātur. 10. Castra hostium animōs equitum nōn

<sup>1</sup> This and the following exercise should not be omitted, as new words are introduced.

terrent. 11. Mē flōrēs pulchrī, tē arma equitum, dēlectant. 12. Prōrae nāvium multīs flōribus ōrnan̄tur.

[48.] 1. The names of many men are known to me. 2. The beautiful colours of the flowers delight the girl. 3. The soldiers surround the camp with a high rampart. 4. The horsemen urge on their horses with the spurs. 5. My father is delighted with a long talk. 6. The poet's songs delight many men. 7. Your father praises the beautiful colours of the flowers. 8. The names of many flowers are known to my sister. 9. Lazy men are always unhappy. 10. The gardens are full of beautiful flowers. 11. The enemy's cavalry lay waste the royal lands. 12. The king surrounds the rampart with a high rampart. 13. Many men never pay the taxes. 14. The little girl gives many flowers to the queen. 15. The forces of the enemy lay waste part of the lands.

## VII. *A Surprise.*

Bellō Aegyptiō, dum mīlitēs nostrī castra faciunt, intentī-que opere sunt, subitō speculātōrēs accurrunt. "Adeunt hostēs," clāmant. Et statim ex arbustīs undique hostēs exsūrgunt, et multīs saevīs-que clāmōribus in castra irruunt. Nostrī cōnfestim arma arripiunt. Paucī extrā castra orbēs faciunt; cēterī ex vallō tēla coniciunt. Nostrī multōs āmittunt: tandem hostēs victī recēdunt. Tum horrible spectāculum circā castra nostra erat. Corpora hominum, camēlōrum, equōrum mīxta jacent. Inveniuntur, etiam, inter mortuōs fēminae puerīque parvī. Nostrī, tamen, quamquam

ācrī proeliō fessī sunt, castra cōficiunt. Neque nocturnō tempore gemitus hostium vulnerātōrum mīlītibz facultātem quiētis dat.

## SECTION 19.

THIRD DECLENSION: GENDER — (*Continued*).

FEMININE RULE.

Those nouns in the third declension are feminine which end in *is*, *ās*, *aus*, *x*, *s* (following another consonant, *ēs* (not increasing)).

Decline: —

Nāvis longa	<i>a long ship (a war-ship).</i>
Medīa aestās	<i>midsummer.</i>
Summa laus	<i>the highest praise.</i>
Clāra vōx	<i>a clear voice.</i>
Māgna pars	<i>a large part.</i>
Nigra nūbēs	<i>a black cloud.</i>

There are many exceptions to this rule also — *civīs*, *hostis*, *juvenis*, *senex*, *rēx*, the meaning shows to be masculine.

[49.] 1. Nāvēs longae hostium mīlitēs nostrōs nōn terrent. 2. Laudēs tuae, magister, impigrum puerum dēlectant! 3. Māgna pars ōrātōrum rēgem et rēgīnam semper culpat. 4. Nautae māgnās et nigrās nūbēs timent. 5. Vōx puellae māgnae partī juvenum grāta est. 6. Tempora nostra et mōrēs nostrī saepe culpan-tur. 7. Ōrātōris sermō facētus mē, tē longa verba, dēlectant. 8. Poēta parvōs pedēs et pulchrum caput

puellae laudat. 9. Nigrae nūbēs nautās nāvium rēgi-  
ārū terrent. 10. Laus puerīs et magistrīs, servīs et  
dominīs, grāta est. 11. Hostēs mediā aestāte castra  
altō aggere circumdant. 12. Aestās senibus et juveni-  
bus, puerīs et puellīs, grāta est.

[50.] 1. The boys see the war-ships of the enemy.  
2. Our war-ships are known to the enemy. 3. Wine  
is welcome *in* midsummer. 4. Flowers are beautiful  
*in* the middle of summer. 5. The master gives the  
highest praise to the boys. 6. The girl's clear voice  
charms the young men. 7. The black clouds frighten  
the sailor. 8. The royal sailors fear the black cloud.  
9. The boys see a large part of the ships. 10. The  
master praises the boy's clear voice. 11. Our king  
gives the lands of the enemy to the cavalry. 12. Little  
animals have often long names. 13. The names of the  
active young men are known to the king. 14. Your  
sister's beautiful voice delights me. 15. The boy gives  
a large part of the beautiful flowers to his mother.

[51.]<sup>1</sup> 1. Equitēs rēgiū in mediā urbe sunt. 2. Laus  
puerī auribus mātris grāta est. 3. Parva animālia  
saepe māgnās aurēs habent. 4. Mediā nocte equitēs  
castra hostium circumdant. 5. Multae urbis nostrae  
partēs puerō nōtae sunt. 6. Nigrae nūbēs ab equi-  
tibus timentur. 7. Mediā aestāte pulchrī sunt in  
hortīs rēgiīs flōrum colōrēs. 8. Dēmostenēs, clārus  
ōrātor, animōs cīvium saepe incitat. 9. Multōs homi-  
nēs antīqua carmina mājōrum nostrōrum dēlectant.  
10. Verba patrum et mātrum saepe pigrōs puerōs in-  
citant. 11. Prōrae nāvium longārum aestāte semper

<sup>1</sup> This and the following exercise should not be omitted.



flōribus ōrnantur. 12. Rēx, vir bonus, equitibus impi-grīs pecūniam, praemium dīligentiae, dat.

[52.] 1. The horses are lame *in* the feet. 2. Our city is known to many men. 3. The girl's clear voice delights our ears. 4. In the middle of the night shouts frighten the king. 5. At midnight the forces of the enemy lay waste our lands. 6. Our citizens do not fear the words of the orators. 7. The girls decorate the queen's head with flowers. 8. My brother is charmed with your conversation. 9. The girl has small and beautiful ears. 10. Praise is welcome to the minds of many men. 11. Many cities are known to the soldiers and sailors. 12. A great number of cities pay taxes to the king. 13. Your letter is welcome to our mother. 14. Our master is not satisfied with our diligence. 15. In midsummer my room is always full of flowers.

### VIII. *The Roman Army fights a Serpent.*

Prīmō bellō Pūnicō Rōmānī castra aliquandō in Āfricā apud Bagradam flūmen pōnunt; multisque proeliīs cōpiās hostium ēgregiā mīlitum virtūte superant. Sed, paucīs post diēbus, appāret serpēns ingentis māgnitudinis; et exercitum flūminis ūsū prohibet. Mīlītēs prīmō ex vallō sagittīs tēlisque serpentem petunt; deinde māgnam manum Rēgulus cōsul ēdūcit. Serpēns multōs ingentī ōre corripit; multōs caudae volūminibus ēlīdit; reliquī, metū percūlsī, ad castra celesriter fugiunt. Proximō diē tōtus exercitus in campum ēdūcitur. Diū et ācriter pūgnātur. Tandem vērō



ballistās et catapultās admovent: crēbrīs lapidum vulneribus serpēns interficitur. Sanguis autem mōnstrī vicīnum flūmen imbuit; et tōta regiō pestiferō adflātū polluitur. Castra igitur Rōmānī summovent. Corium, longum pedēs centum et vīgintī, Rōmam mittunt. Cīvēs in templō pōnunt.

## SECTION 20.

## THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER RULE.

The neuter terminations are *ar, ur, us, l, a, n, c, e, t.*

**ar, ur, us.**

Decline: —

Calcar acūtum	<i>a sharp spur.</i>
Crēbrum fulgur	<i>the frequent lightning.</i>
Lītus longum	<i>the long shore.</i>

[53.] 1. Tempora antīqua laudat senex, nostra culpat. 2. Mīlitēs nautās hostium et nāvēs in lītore vident. 3. Puerī multa genera animālium in hortīs vident. 4. Equitēs acūtō calcārī equōs semper incitant. 5. Crēbra fulgura animōs puellārum nōn terrent. 6. Opera Cicerōnis nōta sunt senī et juvenī. 7. Nōn frīgus, nōn nūbēs, nōn fulgura tē terrent! 8. Māgnam vōcem mīlitis mulier timet. 9. Puerī corpora multōrum nautārum in lītore vident. 10. Tempora antīqua ab ōrātōribus et poētīs laudantur. 11. Māgnī tuī clāmōrēs auribus nostrīs nōn sunt grātī. 12. Māgnae hostium cōpiae cotīdiē urbem nostram circumdant. 13. Mīlitēs praemiīs rēgis nunquam sunt contentī.

14. Puellae nigrīs nūbibus saepe terrentur. 15. Opera orātōris et poētae ā multīs hominibus laudantur.

[54.] 1. The sailors love the shore. 2. The enemy's horses fear the lightning. 3. The sister gives spurs to the brother. 4. The frequent lightning-flashes frighten the women. 5. The horseman's spurs are sharp. 6. The active boy does not fear the cold. 7. There are many kinds of books. 8. The cold to-day is great. 9. The head is an important (*magnus*) part of the body. 10. In midsummer the shore is welcome.

[55.] 1. At midnight the cold is often great. 2. Our *men* see the ships on (*in*, with abl.) the shore. 3. The works of the orators are known to many. 4. The black clouds frighten the sailors of the war-ship. 5. There are many gardens in our city. 6. There are flowers of many kinds in the garden. 7. My father praises the poet's works. 8. The girls and the women fear the frequent lightning-flashes. 9. The cavalry's sharp spurs urge on the horses. 10. The soldiers see the bodies of the enemy on the shore.

## SECTION 21.

THIRD DECLENSION : NEUTER RULE — (*Continued*).

l, a, n, c, e, t.

Decline : —

Māgnum animal	a large animal.
Pulchrum poēma	a beautiful poem.
Flūmen lātum	the broad stream.

Album lāc	<i>white milk.</i>
Lātum mare	<i>the wide sea.</i>
Māgnum caput	<i>a big head.</i>

[56.] 1. Poēmata tua ab amīcīs meīs saepe laudantur. 2. Nautae mediā aestāte lātum mare trānseunt. 3. Amīcus tuus librum in conclāvī meō legit. 4. Māgna hostium corpora nostrōs mīlitēs terrent. 5. Mātrēs puerīs fessīs multum lāc dant. 6. Multa genera animālium in lātō marī sunt. 7. Mercātōrēs nāvēs hostium longās timent. 8. Magister clārī opera Cicerōnis cotīdiē legit. 9. Balbus et Mārcus amīcīs meīs nōmina sunt. 10. Cīvēs māgnam vectīgālium partem tempore nōn pendunt. 11. Carmina poētae nostrī ā multīs laudantur. 12. Puer caput lātum, pedēs māgnōs, aurēs parvās, habet.

[57.] 1. Many animals have not feet. 2. My friends often read your poem. 3. There are many streams in the lands of the enemy. 4. *He* gives milk to his sister, wine to his brother. 5. Sailors love the broad sea. 6. The royal rooms are beautiful. 7. My mother is tired with the long conversation. 8. The forces of the enemy cross the broad river. 9. My father is always reading your poems. 10. Your room charms me. 11. The horse crosses the broad river. 12. The girl fears rivers and seas. 13. His sister gives *some* milk to the tired boy. 14. The names of many books are known to the boys. 15. The citizens pay many taxes to the king.

IX. *A Battle.*

Caesar mediā nocte castrīs omnibus cōpiīs exit; et iter ad flūmen facit. Nōta tamen est rēs hostibus; et primā lūce nostrī cōpiās hostium pedestrēs in summō colle vident. Tum Caesar in dextrō et sinistro cornū equitēs collocat, et mīlitum animōs paucīs verbīs ad pūgnam incitat. “Mīlitēs, omnis spēs cīvitatīs Rōmānae in virtūte nostrā est; fortibus vīctōria est.” Hostēs primō sinistrum exercitūs latus, deinde dextrum carpunt; postrēmō in mediōs ōrdinēs impetum faciunt. Longa et ācris pūgna, crēbra vulnera. Nōn terrent nostrōs ingentia hostium corpora, māgnīque clāmōrēs. Pūgnam in manibus faciunt, et brevī tempore hostēs ex omnibus partibus superant. Dux hostium in manūs nostrās incidit. Caesar ēgregiam mīlitum virtūtem laudat; et omnibus praemia dat. Tum summā celeritāte domum redeunt, et ā cīvibus māgnā laude excipiuntur.

## SECTION 22.

## EXCEPTIONS TO THE GENDER RULES FOR THE THIRD DECLENSION.

There are, as has been said, many exceptions to these rules. Nouns in -ō are masculine, but those in -iō, -dō, -gō are feminine. *Ōrātiō*, *multitūdō*, *imāgō*, are therefore feminine. There are also many exceptions to the rule that the termination -is is feminine. *Mēnsis* and *fīnis*, for instance, with many others, are masculine.

[58.] 1. *Ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis ā magistrō nostrō cōtīdiē laudantur.* 2. *Cōpiaē hostiū mediā aestāte finēs nostrōs vastant.* 3. *Nostrī māgnīs cōpiīs mēse Jānuāriō castra hostiū circumdant.* 4. *Nāvēs longae hostiū mediā nocte mare trānseunt.* 5. *Mārcō māgnae sunt aurēs, Alexandrō parvae.* 6. *Mēse Jūniō pulchrī sunt in hortiīs nostrīs flōrēs.* 7. *Nostra urbs māgnōs et lātōs finēs habet.* 8. *Māgna hostiū multitūdō agrōs nostrōs vastat.* 9. *Pulchra imāgō Cicerōnis, ōrātōris clārī, conclāve meum ōrnat.* 10. *Nautae nostrī māgnam nāvium longārum multitūdinem in lītore vident.* 11. *Poēmata tua ā multīs hominibus leguntur et laudantur.* 12. *Frātrum Mārcus piger, Alexander fessus, est.*

[59.] 1. The orations of our king are known to many *men*. 2. The cavalry of the enemy lay waste our territories. 3. Many busts of our ancestors adorn our rooms. 4. In the month of January our ships cross the sea. 5. There is a great multitude of animals in the sea. 6. Many men praise my speeches. 7. Our king has great and wide territories. 8. They see a great multitude of the enemy. 9. In the month of June he crosses the sea. 10. They read the celebrated orations every day.

[60.] 1. Many horsemen are crossing the river. 2. The citizens blame the king's long speech. 3. The voices of the king and queen are known to the citizens. 4. A beautiful image of the queen adorns the king's room. 5. Our sailors are not afraid of black clouds. 6. The enemy's cavalry lay waste the royal territories. 7. The king and queen are beloved by



the citizens. 8. Lightning is frequent in the month of June. 9. The master gives wine to the tired slaves. 10. There is a multitude of flowers in the gardens.

## SECTION 23.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

Adjectives of this declension are not so fully declined as those of the second declension. They have seldom three forms for the three genders, and often only one. Those that end in *-is* are thus declined:—

**Fortis**, *brave*. Stem, **forti**.

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. } and } Voc. }	Fortis	forte.
Gen.	Fortis	fortis.
Dat.	Fortī	fortī.
Acc.	Fortem	forte.
Abl.	Fortī	fortī.

## PLURAL.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. } and } Voc. }	Fortēs	fortia.
Gen.	Fortium	fortium.
Dat.	Fortibus	fortibus.
Acc.	Fortēs, -īs	fortia.
Abl.	Fortibus	fortibus.



[61.] 1. Omne genus animālium capita habet. 2. Omnī tempore amīcī hominibus grātī sunt. 3. Clāssis Rōmāna mediā aestāte mare trānsit. 4. Equitēs Rōmānī omnēs hostium cōpiās superant. 5. Mēnse Jūniō brevēs, Jānuāriō longae, noctēs sunt. 6. Rēx Mārcum, virum fortem et bonum cīvem, laudat. 7. Senex mājōrēs, virōs fortēs et gravēs, laudat. 8. Ōrātiō rēgis ā Mārcō, fortī virō, laudātur. 9. Imāginēs mājōrum, virōrum fortium, conclāve rēgium ōrnant. 10. Omne genus operum mīlitibus nōtum est. 11. Gravia magistrī verba et mē et tē incitant. 12. Ōrātiōnēs rēgis gravēs sunt, et ab omnibus laudantur.

[62.] 1. Our slaves are both (*et*) faithful and brave. 2. The prows of the war-ships are heavy. 3. The oration is long, the poem short. 4. Balbus praises the diligence of all his friends. 5. In mid-winter our fleet overcomes the Romans. 6. Our ships overcome the Roman fleet. 7. Winter is the time of long nights, summer of short. 8. All the works of Cicero are known to our master. 9. The boy's head is long, his body short. 10. Marcus's voice is clear, Alexander's deep (*gravis*). 11. All the enemy's forces lay waste our territories. 12. The enemy's war-ships are seen on the long shore. 13. The horseman's spurs are big and heavy. 14. The enemy pay a large sum of money to the Romans. 15. The words of the queen are praised by Balbus, a brave citizen.

## SECTION 24.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION — (*Continued*).*Sapiēns* and *audāx* are declined thus:—

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. } and } Voc. }	<i>Sapiēns</i>	<i>sapiēns.</i>
Gen.	<i>Sapientis</i>	<i>sapientis.</i>
Dat.	<i>Sapientī</i>	<i>sapientī.</i>
Acc.	<i>Sapientem</i>	<i>sapiēns.</i>
Abl.	<i>Sapientī, e</i>	<i>sapientī, e.</i>

## PLURAL.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. } and } Voc. }	<i>Sapientēs</i>	<i>sapientia.</i>
Gen.	<i>Sapientium</i>	<i>sapientium.</i>
Dat.	<i>Sapientibus</i>	<i>sapientibus.</i>
Acc.	<i>Sapientēs, īs</i>	<i>sapientia.</i>
Abl.	<i>Sapientibus</i>	<i>sapientibus.</i>

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. } and } Voc. }	<i>Audāx</i>	<i>audāx.</i>
Gen.	<i>Audācis</i>	<i>audācis.</i>
Dat.	<i>Audācī</i>	<i>audācī.</i>
Acc.	<i>Audācem</i>	<i>audāx.</i>
Abl.	<i>Audācī, e</i>	<i>audācī, e.</i>

PLURAL.

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. } and } Voc. }	Audācēs	audācia.
Gen.	Audācium	audācium.
Dat.	Audācibus	audācibus.
Acc.	Audācēs, īs	audācia.
Abl.	Audācibus	audācibus.

[63.] 1. Nihil sapientium animōs terret. 2. Parva puella ingēns animal timet. 3. Rēx mercātōribus ingentem pecūniam dat. 4. Opera Cicerōnis puerīs saepe difficilia sunt. 5. Dominus servō, opere difficilī fessō, vīnum dat. 6. Ōrātiō rēgis longa, rēgīnae brevis, est. 7. Omnia fortibus et audācibus facilia sunt. 8. Puer animō audācī mare mediā hieme trānsit. 9. Pater tuus, vir sapiēns, opera Cicerōnis legit. 10. Omnia litora nostrī maris nautīs audācibus nōta sunt.

[64.] 1. Nothing is difficult to active men. 2. The boy does not fear the hugé body of the enemy. 3. Praise is welcome to all men. 4. To the daring mind nothing is difficult. 5. The names of the wise *men* are known to the boys. 6. The bodies of our enemies are huge. 7. The days are short in the month of January. 8. The royal forces overcome our cavalry. 9. The heads of many animals are huge. 10. Many works are difficult to the lazy, easy to the active. 11. The cold in winter is great and severe (*gravis*). 12. The ships of our fleet are enormous.

## SECTION 25.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION — (*Continued*).

Adjectives in *-er* of the third declension have three endings in the nominative singular, and are declined like *ācer*: —

**Ācer**, *brave, eager*. Stem, **ācri**.

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. and Voc. }	Ācer	ācris	ācre.
Gen.	Ācris	ācris	ācris.
Dat.	Ācrī	ācrī	ācrī.
Acc.	Ācre <b>m</b>	ācre <b>m</b>	ācre.
Abl.	Ācrī	ācrī	ācrī.

## PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. and Voc. }	Ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria.
Gen.	Ācrium	ācrium	ācrium.
Dat.	Ācribus	ācribus	ācribus.
Acc.	Ācrēs, īs	ācrēs, īs	ācria.
Abl.	Ācribus	ācribus	ācribus.

The one adjective *celer* is thus declined: —

**Celer**, *swift*. Stem, **celeri**.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. } and Voc. }	Celer	celer <b>is</b>	celer <b>e</b> .
Gen.	Celer <b>is</b>	celer <b>is</b>	celer <b>is</b> .
Dat.	Celer <b>ī</b>	celer <b>ī</b>	celer <b>ī</b> .
Acc.	Celer <b>em</b>	celer <b>em</b>	celer <b>e</b> .
Abl.	Celer <b>ī</b>	celer <b>ī</b>	celer <b>ī</b> .

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. } and Voc. }	Celer <b>ēs</b>	celer <b>ēs</b>	celer <b>ia</b> .
Gen.	Celer <b>um</b>	celer <b>um</b>	celer <b>um</b> .
Dat.	Celer <b>ibus</b>	celer <b>ibus</b>	celer <b>ibus</b> .
Acc.	Celer <b>ēs, īs</b>	celer <b>ēs, īs</b>	celer <b>ia</b> .
Abl.	Celer <b>ibus</b>	celer <b>ibus</b>	celer <b>ibus</b> .

[65.] 1. Dominī ācris vōx omnibus servīs nōta est.  
 2. Clāssis Rōmāna mēse Decembrī mare trānsit.  
 3. Nāvis hostium celeris brevī tempore nostrum mare trānsit. 4. Equitēs Rōmānī cōpiās hostium pedestrēs superant. 5. Equī equitum celerum fessī sunt.  
 6. Militēs ā Mārcō, ācrī virō et impigrō, laudantur.  
 7. Mēse Decembrī māgnū et ācre saepe frīgus est. 8. Equitēs celerēs equōs calcāribus acūtīs incitant. 9. Cōpiae nostrae pedestrēs ab equitibus hostium superantur. 10. Puer miser sinistrā aure surdus, pede dextrō claudus est.

[66.] 1. Quick horses delight the horseman. 2. Nothing is difficult to the daring young man. 3. The quick

cavalry of the enemy overcome our forces. 4. The boy sees the horses of the quick cavalry. 5. Marcus is a spirited and active man. 6. The enemy's horses are spirited, their horsemen active. 7. Nothing is difficult for the daring horsemen. 8. In the month of December the nights are long. 9. Our *men* overcome the infantry forces of the enemy. 10. The enemy overcome our men in a short time. 11. The soldier is lame *in* the left foot. 12. The active sailors cross the sea every day.

#### X. *A Roman Account of Britain.*

Omniū īnsulārum, quae Rōmānīs nōtae sunt, mākima est Britannia; et īnsulās, quidem, nostrī maris<sup>1</sup> multīs partibus superat. Hominum est īfīnīta multitūdō; crēbra aedificia; pecorum māgnus numerus. Arborum omnium generum cōpia est. Aurum, et argentum, et alia metalla, inveniuntur. Frīgus nōn est māgnum; caelum autem crēbrīs imbris ac nebulīs foedum. Unum lātus īnsulae ad Galliam, alterum ad Hispāniam, alterum ad Germāniam spectat. Incolārum hūmānissimī sunt quī Cantium incolunt: nam hūc nāvēs ex Galliā omnēs et mercātōrēs veniunt. Gallī, ut est fāma, hanc maritimam partem occupābant; aedificia Gallicīs similia, mōrēs īdem, sermō haud multum dīversus. Nōn nōtae sunt Britannīs segetēs, sed lacte et carne vīvunt, pellibusque vestiuntur. Corpora vitrō īficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem. Crinēs longī sunt; labrum superius nōn rādunt. In bellō ingentī virtūte pūgnant.

<sup>1</sup> "Our sea" to a Roman is the Mediterranean.



RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES.<sup>1</sup>

A. 1. Balbus, vir fortis et sapiēns, dextrō pede claudus, et sinistrā aure surdus, est. 2. Multōrum hominum animī pecūniā et praemiīs incitantur. 3. Omnia Quintō, virō fortī et impigrō, facilia sunt. 4. Rēx sermōne Mārcī, facētī hominis, saepe dēlectātur. 5. Poēta, vir sapiēns, carmina rēgis nunquam nōn laudat. 6. Dīligentia servī nigrī, fidī et impigrī hominis, saepe ā dominō laudātur. 7. Prōrae nāvium nostrārum hodiē ā nautīs flōribus ōrnantur. 8. Mulierēs miserae crēbrō fulgure et nigrīs nūbibus terrentur. 9. Mōrēs antīquōrum temporum semper ab ōrātōre, summō virō, laudantur. 10. Animī mātrum clāmōribus audācium hostium terrentur. 11. Rēgem hostium, ingentem hominem, nihil terret. 12. Verba Cicerōnis, summī virī et bonī cīvis, omnibus grāta sunt.

B. 1. In the month of December the soldiers are not in arms. 2. My friends are charmed with our letter. 3. They give milk to the little girls, wine to the big boys. 4. The lazy (plur.) praise the body, the wise the mind. 5. The winter is keen, and the cold severe (*gravis*). 6. The unfortunate (*miser*) slave has many *things* on his head. 7. The Roman fleet does not cross the sea in mid-winter. 8. At midnight the cold is often great. 9. The works of Cicero, a good citizen, charm all *men*. 10. The brother's voice is deep, the sister's shrill.

<sup>1</sup> To be omitted or not at discretion.

C. 1. Quintus has black, Marcus white slaves. 2. The praises of our ancestors are not always pleasing to our ears. 3. The frequent lightning delights the boy and frightens the girl. 4. A great number of ships are seen on the shore in winter. 5. Our city has a great number of taxes. 6. The old men pay the money to the merchant in time. 7. The sharp spurs of the cavalry frighten the unfortunate horses. 8. Nothing is difficult to the active and daring boy. 9. The young man likes few words, the old man many. 10. The Roman soldiers surround the camp with a high and broad rampart.

D. 1. He has books of all kinds in his room; he never reads *them*. 2. My friends Marcus and Quintus are always praising the diligence of their fathers. 3. The sailors praise the king's long speech with loud shouting. 4. My brother is reading the old man's long poem with great industry. 5. The names of many animals are known to the wise. 6. The merchant often crosses the sea in a small and swift ship. 7. The king gives a beautiful likeness of the poet to the queen. 8. My room is full of your books. 9. The infantry forces of the enemy are defeated every day by our cavalry. 10. In the middle of the summer the royal forces cross the river, and lay waste the territories of the enemy.

## SECTION 26.

## THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

These nouns end either in *-us* or *-u*. Those that end in *-us* are, as a rule, masculine; those that end in *-u* are always neuter. The stem ends in *u*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. } and Voc. }	Exercit <b>us</b>	exercit <b>ūs</b> .
Gen.	Exercit <b>ūs</b>	exercit <b>uum</b> .
Dat.	Exercit <b>uī</b> ( <b>ū</b> )	exercit <b>ibus</b> .
Acc.	Exercit <b>um</b>	exercit <b>ūs</b> .
Abl.	Exercit <b>ū</b>	exercit <b>ibus</b> .

[67.] 1. Exercituī Rōmānō et cōpiae pedestrēs et equitēs sunt. 2. Flūctūs ingentēs miseram nāvem in lītus agunt. 3. Crēbrī hostium impetūs nostrōs in mare agunt. 4. Nihil exercitibus Rōmānīs difficile est. 5. Hostēs māgnō impetuum numerō nostrōs superant. 6. Puer piger ā magistrō, virō ācrī et sapiente, culpātur. 7. Nostrī brevem et ācrem impetum in hostēs faciunt. 8. Mediā hieme flūctūs saepe ingentēs sunt. 9. Sapiēns nōn nūbēs, nōn fulgura, nōn flūctuum impetum, timet. 10. Hostēs equōs calcāribus incitant, et māgnū in nostrōs impetum faciunt.

[68.] 1. Nothing is difficult to our army. 2. The enemy by a quick attack overcome our men. 3. The force of the waves drives the ship on to (*in*, with acc.) the shore. 4. The cavalry make a charge on our foot-forces. 5. The Roman armies are often defeated by

the enemy. 6. The old man is lame to-day *in* his left foot. 7. The daring sailor does not fear the rush of the waves. 8. The foot-forces cross the broad river. 9. The frequent attacks of the enemy frighten our men. 10. Marcus is always active; Balbus does (*agit*) nothing. 11. In the month of December there is nothing in our garden. 12. The enemy have many kinds of ships.

## SECTION 27.

FOURTH DECLENSION — (*Continued*).

Neuter nouns in *-u* are declined like *cornu*:—

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. } and Voc. }	Corn ū	corn ua.
Gen.	Corn ūs	corn uum.
Dat.	Corn ū	corn ibus.
Acc.	Corn ū	corn ua.
Abl.	Corn ū	corn ibus.

A few nouns in *-us* are feminine; for example, *ma-nus*, a hand, and *quercus*, an oak (as nearly all names of trees).

[69.] 1. Cornua multōrum animālium acūta sunt. 2. Dextrum nostrōrum cornū ab hostibus superātur. 3. Multae et antiquae quercūs in hortō sunt. 4. Avēs parvae mediā aestāte in hortīs canunt. 5. Equitum pars in sinistrō cornū, pars in dextrō, est. 6. Māgna

avium multitudō in summā quercū<sup>1</sup> canit. 7. Puella manūs parvās et parvōs pedēs habet. 8. Dextrum exercitūs cornū ācrem impetum in nostrōs facit. 9. Multae nāvēs hodiē in māgnō portū sunt. 10. Aurēs, manūs, pedēs partēs corporum nostrōrum sunt.

[70.] 1. Many animals have horns. 2. All the cavalry are on the right wing. 3. The waves drive the ship into harbour. 4. The harbours are full of war-ships. 5. The boy has large hands and small feet. 6. The master has a book *in* his left hand. 7. Many birds are singing on the top of the oak. 8. The harbour is welcome to the tired sailors. 9. The force of the waves drives the war-ships into harbour. 10. The whole army is in the territories of the Germans. 11. The boy has a book in his left hand, a flower in his right. 12. All the harbours of our shore are known to the sailors.

## SECTION 28.

### FOURTH DECLENSION — (*Continued*).

*Domus*, a house, belongs to this declension, though some of its cases are formed according to the second declension. In gender it is feminine.

<sup>1</sup> *Summus* "highest," but *summa quercus* means not "the highest oak," but "the oak where it is highest," *i.e.* "the top of the oak."



	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. and Voc. }	Dom <b>us</b>	dom <b>ūs</b> .
Gen.	Dom <b>ūs</b>	dom <b>uum</b> or <b>ōrum</b> .
Dat.	Dom <b>uī</b> or <b>ō</b>	dom <b>ibus</b> .
Acc.	Dom <b>um</b>	dom <b>ōs</b> or <b>ūs</b> .
Abl.	Dom <b>ō</b> or <b>ū</b>	dom <b>ibus</b> .

*At home, domī.*

*(To) home, domum.*

*From home, domō.*

[71.] 1. Mārcus amīcum meum domī tuae saepe videt. 2. Māgnum domōrum numerum aedificant mercātōrēs. 3. Mīles aestāte domō exit, hieme domum redit. 4. Māter mea hodiē forīs, pater domī est. 5. Servī māne domō exeunt, vesperī redeunt domum. 6. Clāssis Rōmāna mediā noctē in portum redit. 7. Vesperī impetus flūctuum nāvem in portum agit. 8. Māne equitēs in agrōs hostium exeunt. 9. Avēs parvās domōs in summā quereū faciunt. 10. Multae imāginēs mājōrum domum nostram ōrnant.

[72.] 1. The boy returns home every day. 2. In winter old men are always at home. 3. My friend is satisfied with our house. 4. The merchant's house is large, the master's small. 5. The boys return home in the month of December. 6. Marcus is always at home, Balbus out of doors. 7. The merchant builds many houses for his slaves. 8. On the left wing are the servants of the horsemen. 9. The king is building a big harbour for the citizens. 10. Many animals



have not hands. 11. The daring boys are on the top of the oak. 12. My mother never goes out from home in the winter.

## SECTION 29.

## THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

The nouns of this declension end in *-ēs*, and are feminine. The stem ends in *ē*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	<b><i>Rēs, thing.</i></b>	
Nom. } and Voc. }	<b><i>Rēs</i></b>	<b><i>rēs.</i></b>
Gen.	<b><i>Reī</i></b>	<b><i>rērū.</i></b>
Dat.	<b><i>Reī</i></b>	<b><i>rēbus.</i></b>
Acc.	<b><i>Rem</i></b>	<b><i>rēs.</i></b>
Abl.	<b><i>Rē</i></b>	<b><i>rēbus.</i></b>

*Diēs*, however, is masculine, though in the singular sometimes feminine. *Diēs* and *Rēs* alone are complete in the plural. *Spēs* and others have Nom. and Acc. plural.

[73.] 1. *Balbus rēbus in adversīs contentō animō est.* 2. *Māgna est spēs victōriæ in animīs fortium militum.* 3. *Nāvēs hieme portū nunquam exeunt.* 4. *Servī dominō ingentem domum in lītore aedificant.* 5. *Mārcus multōs diēs domī meae manet.* 6. *Opera Cicerōnis māgnam partem diēi legunt.* 7. *Mercātor nunquam domī est; semper mare trānsit.* 8. *Sapiēs rēbus in adversīs bonam spem habet.* 9. *Cōpiæ nos-*

trae paucōs diēs in fīnibus hostium manent. 10. Rēbus in secundīs paucī, multī in secundīs, hominibus amīcī sunt.

[74.] 1. Adversity does not frighten the minds of the wise. 2. Marcus does many things every day. 3. In the evening the sailors return into harbour. 4. The days are short to the active, long to the lazy. 5. The wise man never fears adversity. 6. All the hope of the soldiers is in the king. 7. Adversity is known to all men. 8. There is a hope of prosperity in the minds of the citizens. 9. The boys are often out of doors in the summer. 10. The young men have good hopes. 11. The boys remain at home *for* a few days (acc.). 12. The hope of victory urges on the minds of the soldiers.

### XI. *A Ghost.*

Athēnodōrus, philosophus, spatiōsam et capācem domum Athēnīs exiguō pretiō ēmit. Aliquot diēs ibi fēliciter habitābat. Tandem per silentium noctis, dum librum legit, strepitum vinculōrum, longius prīmō, deinde ē proximō, audit. Mox appāret senex: ōs pallidum est; corpus maciē cōfectum; vestēs squālidæ; longa barba; capillus horridus; crūribus compedēs, manibus catēnās, gerit quātūque. Stat mōnstrum, digitōque Athēnodōrō adnuit. Sūrgit philosophus, tollitque lūmen, effigiem secūtūrus. Ībat illa lentō gradū: sequitur Athēnodōrus. Tandem dēflēxit in āream domūs: tunc dilāpsa dēserit comitem. Athēnodōrus sīgnum locō pōnit. Posterō diē locum effodit: inveniuntur ossa catēnīs implicita.

## SECTION 30.

## THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: THE COMPARATIVE.

Altus, <i>high</i> ;	altior, <i>higher</i> .
Grātus, <i>welcome</i> ;	grātior, <i>more welcome</i> .
Brevis, <i>short</i> ;	brevior, <i>shorter</i> .

*Altior, grātior, breviar* are called the comparatives of *altus, grātus, brevis*, which are termed their positives.

To form the comparative, the rule is to take the genitive singular of the adjective, and change the *-i* or *-is* into *-ior*; so —

altus — gen. alti — comp. altior
brevis — gen. brevis — comp. breviar

There are three degrees of comparison, — Positive, Comparative, Superlative.

The comparative is thus declined: —

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. and Voc.	Brevior	brevius	breviōr ēs	breviōr a.
Gen.	Breviōris	breviōris	breviōr um	breviōr um.
Dat.	Breviōr ī	breviōr ī	breviōr ibus	breviōr ibus.
Acc.	Breviōr em	brevius	breviōr ēs, īs	breviōr a.
Abl.	Breviōr e, ī	breviōr e, ī	breviōr ibus	breviōr ibus.

- [75.] 1. Aestāte quam hieme noctēs breviōrēs sunt.  
2. Magister verbīs graviōribus puerum culpat. 3. Opera

Cicerōnis quam Caesaris difficiliōra sunt. 4. Poētae Graeci quam Rōmānī clāriōrēs sunt. 5. Militēs rēgem dē omībus rēbus certiōrem faciunt. 6. Caesar mīlītēs dē adventū rēgis certiōrēs facit. 7. Puerī quam puellae audāciōrēs sunt. 8. Longiōrēs hodiē epistolae sunt. 9. Fulgura aestāte quam hieme crēbriōra sunt. 10. Agger noster quam hostium altior est. 11. Prōrae nostrārum nāvium quam hostium altiōrēs sunt. 12. Rēs adversae hominibus saepe quam rēs secundae ūtiliōrēs sunt.

[76.] 1. The Romans are more daring than the enemy. 2. Julia is more beautiful than Cornelia. 3. Horses are more useful to men than birds. 4. Your arrival was more welcome than mine to our father. 5. Balbus has braver slaves than Quintus. 6. Marcus's conversation is wittier than Quintus's. 7. The days are shorter in winter than in summer. 8. The enemy make a more vigorous (*ācer*) attack to-day. 9. Caesar informs the soldiers about (*dē*, with abl.) all matters. 10. The soldiers inform Caesar about the enemy's charge. 11. The soldiers are braver than the citizens. 12. The mind is more useful to men than the body. 13. Things are more useful than words. 14. Your poem is more beautiful than *that* of your brother. 15. Marcus informs his father of the arrival of the merchant.

*Nihil ūtilius quam pecūniā est* is not the only way in which "Nothing is more useful than money" can be turned. One may also say, *Nihil ūtilius pecūniā est*, "quam" being left out, and the following noun put in the ablative.

[77.] 1. Mārcus Quīntō nōn est facētior. 2. Puerī puellis nōn semper sunt fortiōrēs. 3. Quid nāve longā pulchrius est? 4. Quid portū fessīs nautīs grātius est? 5. Vōx tua meā vōce nōn est clārior. 6. Quid mēse Jūniō quercū grātius est? 7. Quid miserīs sermōne sapientis ūtilius est? 8. Nihil mātīrī adventū tuō grātius est.

[78.] 1. Quintus is not more daring *than* Marcus. 2. The brother is not wiser *than* the sister. 3. What is more uncertain *than* hope? 4. Nothing is more uncertain *than* victory. 5. Young men are not wiser *than* old men. 6. The mind is more useful to men *than* the body. 7. What is more useful to men *than* the hands? 8. Poems are not more useful *than* speeches. 9. The hands are not more useful *than* the feet. 10. The soldier is not always more daring *than* the merchant.

## SECTION 31.

### THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES — (*Continued*).

#### THE SUPERLATIVE.

Altus, *high*; altior, *higher*; altissimus, *highest*.

Brevis, *short*; brevior, *shorter*; brevissimus, *shortest*.

The superlatives of most adjectives are formed by changing the *-i* or *-is* of the genitive singular into *-issimus*.

The superlative *altissimus* means not only “highest” or “most high,” but “very high.”



[79.] 1. Diēs hieme saepe brevissimī sunt. 2. Quīntus omnium mīlitum audācissimus est. 3. Vōx puellae clārissima et dulcissima est. 4. Puerī saepe dulcissimum vīnum amant. 5. Quid tē, cārissime frāter, terret? 6. Omnium puellārum Jūlia hodiē tristissima est. 7. Multa flūmina Asiae quam Eurōpae lātiōra sunt. 8. Epistolae puerī longissimae patrem dēlectant. 9. Aristophānēs omnium poētārum facētissimus est. 10. Quīntus sapientissimus, Mārcus sapientior, est. 11. Hostium fortissimī sunt Germāni. 12. Māter puerum dē morte frātris certiōrem facit. 13. Omnium puerōrum Balbus hodiē tristissimus est. 14. Urbs nostra clārissima est, et omnibus hominibus nōta. 15. Rēx, vir fortissimus et sapientissimus, mortem nōn timet. 16. Quid omnibus animālibus vītā cārius est? 17. Omnium nāvium nostra longissima est. 18. Ōrātor, vir sapientissimus, ā cīvibus amātur. 19. Rōma omnium urbium clārissima est. 20. Omnium rērum mors tristissima, vīta dulcissima, est.

[80.] 1. Hands are very useful to men. 2. My brother is very sad to-day. 3. What frightens you, dearest sister? 4. Quintus is the bravest of the boys. 5. Our city is very celebrated. 6. Your arrival is most delightful. 7. *My* dearest brother, all men praise you! 8. Your letter is very welcome and very pleasant. 9. Of the Roman orators Cicero is the most famous. 10. My mother and sister are very sad to-day. 11. What is dearer to men than life? 12. The bravest of the soldiers do not fear death.



XII. *Arminius, the German Leader, defeats the Romans.*

Quīntilius Vārus exercitū Rōmānō in Germāniam vēnit, et Germānōs pessimō modō tractat. Multa enim vectīgālia postulat ā Germānīs, quī neque aurum neque argentum possident; lēgibus etiam Rōmānōrum pārēre, et linguā Latīnā in jūdicīis dīcere jubet. Arminius, autem, dux Germānōrum, cīvēs ā tantā tamque superbā Rōmānōrum dominātiōne liberāre cōstituit. Vārus igitur per silvam dēnsissimam iter facit. Subitō Arminius ingentibus tōtīus Germāniae cōpiīs impetum in Rōmānōs facit. Rōmānī, longī labōre itineris fessī, impetum Germānōrum nōn sustinent: plūrimōs in pūgnā, aliōs in fugā Germānī interficiunt; cēterōs capiunt. Vārus autem gladiō sē ipse interficit. Sic ūnus vir, prūdentiā et virtūte, Germānōs ā dominātiōne Rōmānōrum liberat. Imperātor Augustus, simul ac nūntium māgnae illīus clādis accipit, māximō dolore adfectus, exclāmat, “Quīntilī Vāre, legiōnēs redde!” Germānia autem ab illō tempore libera erat.

SECTION 32.

THE SUPERLATIVE — (*Continued*).

1. Pulcher, *beautiful*; pulcherrimus, *most beautiful*.  
Adjectives in *-er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus* to the nominative.
2. Six adjectives in *-is* form the superlative by changing the *-is* into *-līmus*.

Facilis, -e, *easy*.

facilior, facilius

facillimus, -a, -um.

Difficilis, -e, *hard*.

difficilior, difficilius

difficillimus, -a, -um.

Similis, -e, *like*.

similior, similius

simillimus, -a, -um.

Dissimilis, -e, *unlike*.

dissimilior, dissimilius

dissimillimus, -a, -um.

Humilis, -e, *low*.

humilior, humilius

humillimus, -a, -um.

Gracilis, -e, *slender*.

gracilior, gracilius

gracillimus, -a, -um.

[81.] 1. Mōrēs puellārum interdum dissimillimī sunt. 2. Omnium sorōrum tuārum Jūlia nunc longē pulcherrima est. 3. Frāter et soror mōribus dissimillimī sunt. 4. Aulus nunc omnium longē pauperrimus est. 5. Jūlia longē difficillimam librī partem nunc legit. 6. Rēx Aulō, hominī pauperrimō, pecūniam dat. 7. Senēs saepe hieme nunquam domō exeunt. 8. Vīta, hominibus brevissima, multīs animālibus brevior est. 9. Poēmata Vergiliī et Horātiī pulcherrima sunt. 10. Athēnae (Athens) urbs longē clārissima tōtīus Graeciae est.

[82.] 1. The boy is sometimes very lazy. 2. The colours of flowers are very unlike. 3. The queen is like to the king *in* character. 4. The merchant is now very poor. 5. The bravest soldiers sometimes fear death. 6. All men like prosperity. 7. The queen is a very beautiful woman. 8. His sister is now very like to Quintus. 9. Many things are very difficult for boys. 10. The young man is now reading very difficult books. 11. All my brothers love

you, dearest mother! 12. Labienus informs Caesar of all matters every day.

## SECTION 33.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
Bonus, <i>good</i> ;	melior, <i>better</i> ;	optimus, <i>best</i> .
Malus, <i>bad</i> ;	pējor, <i>worse</i> ;	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
Māgnus, <i>great</i> ;	mājor, <i>greater</i> ;	māximus, <i>greatest</i> .
Parvus, <i>small</i> ;	minor, <i>smaller</i> ;	minimus, <i>smallest</i> .

*Obs.* *Mājor* (sometimes *mājor nātū*, i.e. in birth) may also mean “older” or “elder.” In the same way, *māximus* (*nātū*) may mean “oldest” or “eldest,” *minor* (*nātū*) “younger,” *minimus* (*nātū*) “youngest.”<sup>1</sup>

[83.] 1. Mōrēs Mārēi quam Balbī multō meliōrēs sunt. 2. Sapientissimī virī semper optimī sunt. 3. Nihil malō vīnō pējus, nihil bonō melius, est. 4. Quid, pessime puer! nihil tē terret? nihil incitat? 5. Corpora Gallōrum quam Germānōrum multō mājōra sunt. 6. Māximae rēs, Mārce, nōn semper sunt optimae! 7. Quīntus parvus, Balbus minor, Aulus minimus est. 8. Frātrum Mārcus māximus, Quīntus minimus est. 9. Mārcus multīs annīs Quīntō nātū mājor est. 10. Fīliī saepe mātribus quam patribus multō cāriōrēs sunt. 11. Quīntus servōs dē morte dominī certiōrēs facit. 12. Mercātor hodiē quam herī multō trīstior est.

<sup>1</sup> When the ages of relations are compared, omit *natu*, otherwise insert it.

13. Omnium puerōrum Alexander hodiē pigerrimus est. 14. Rēx quam rēgīna paucīs annīs nātū minor est. 15. Mercātor nautae pauperrimō māgnam pecūniam dat.

[84.] 1. Marcus has by far the worst slaves. 2. Your house is much smaller than mine. 3. The boy's head is very small, his feet are very big. 4. The waves are smaller to-day than yesterday. 5. Balbus has a greater reward than his brother. 6. Our city has very good harbours. 7. The prows of our ships are very big. 8. The elder of the sisters is very beautiful. 9. The mother blames her elder son. 10. The father is always finding fault with his younger son.

[85.] 1. Girls are often frightened by the smallest things. 2. Our times are better than ancient *times*. 3. Your manners, dearest Balbus, are very good! 4. What is better for little girls *than* good milk? 5. The son is very like to his mother. 6. Aulus is the youngest of all. 7. The boy is much lazier to-day than yesterday. 8. My arrival was very welcome to all. 9. The sister is very unlike (to) her brother. 10. The master is building a very large and very beautiful house.

### XIII. *The Punishments of Ixion, Sisyphus, and Tantalus.*

Terribilēs poenās pendunt (sīc enim antīquī nar-rant) Ixīon, Sīsyphus, Tantālus.

Ixīon, autem, ad rotam ferventem alligātus, semper in caelō volvitur.

Sīsyphus, omne tempus ingēns saxum adversō colle

trūdit. Quotiēns, autem, summum jam collem attingere vidētur, subitō ad īnum dēvolvitur. Iterum iterumque summus ille labor renovātur.

Tantalus, in aquā collocātus, semper sitit. Nam quotiēns haustum aquae sūmere vult, aqua recēdit. Tum etiam pōma super capite pendent: sed quotiēns manum porrigit, rāmī, ventō mōtī, recēdunt. Saxum etiam (ut aliī narrant) capitī impendet: saxī ruīnam timēns, perpetuō metū cruciātur.

## SECTION 34.

### NUMBERS: THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

I. Ūnus, -a, -um.	X. Dēcem.
II. Duo, duae, duo.	XI. Ūndēcim.
III. Trēs, tria.	XII. Duodecim.
IV. Quattuor.	XX. Vīgintī.
V. Quīnque.	XXI. Ūnus et vīgintī or vīgintī unus.
VI. Sex.	100. C. Centum.
VII. Septem.	200. CC. Ducentī, -ae, -a.
VIII. Octō.	1000. M. Mille.
IX. Nōvem.	2000. IIM. Duo mīlia.

*Obs.* Other numbers will be found in the Dictionaries.

*Ūnus* is declined like *bonus*, except that the gen. sing. is *ūnīus*, and dat. sing. *ūnī* in all genders (like *alius*, on p. 89).



*Duo* is declined:—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Duo	duae	duo.
Gen.	Duōrum	duārum	duōrum.
Dat.	Duōbus	duābus	duōbus.
Acc.	Duōs, duo	duās	duo.
Abl.	Duōbus	duābus	duōbus.

*Trēs* is declined:—

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Trēs	tria.
Gen.	Trium	trium.
Dat.	Tribus	tribus.
Acc.	Trēs	tria.
Abl.	Tribus	tribus.

The rest up to 100 are not declined at all.

*Passus*, -ūs, *a pace*.

*Mille passūs* (nom. plur.), 1000 *paces*, *a mile*.

*Duo milia passuum*, 2000 *paces*, *two miles*.

*Mille* in the singular is indeclinable and is an adjective: *mīlia* (not *millia*), the plural, is declined, and is a noun, therefore note the genitive *passuum*.

[86.] 1. Cōpiae hostium ūnō diē ūnum et vīgintī flūmina trānseunt. 2. Duo frātrēs hodiē quam herī multō tristiōrēs sunt. 3. Mille equitēs agrōs nostrōs vastant. 4. Senī pauperrimō duodecim filiī, quīnque filiae, sunt. 5. Duo mīlia mīlitum castra aggere lātō circumdant. 6. Conclāve rēgium quīnquāgintā pedēs longum est. 7. Ūndēvīgintī equitēs rēgem et rēgīnam circumdant. 8. Vīgintī quīnque nāvēs longae



in litore sunt. 9. Sescenta genera flōrum patrī nostrō nōta sunt. 10. In urbe nostrā ōrātōrēs trīgintā, tredecim poētae, tria mīlia mercātōrum sunt. 11. Caesar ā finibus Gallōrum mīlia passuum duodecim abest. 12. Cōpiaē hostium duo mīlia passuum ab urbe absunt. 13. Frāter sorōre tribus annīs mājor est. 14. Mārcus Quīntō duōbus annīs nātū minor est. 15. Quīntus ūnum et vīgintī annōs nātus est. 16. Domus nostra ab urbe quattuor mīlia passuum abest. 17. Mēnsis Februārius vīgintī octō diēs habet. 18. Frāter meus hodiē duodēvīgintī annōs nātus est. 19. Portus māgnus ab urbe septendecim mīlia passuum abest. 20. Soror mea ūndecim annōs nāta est.

[87.] 1. Marcus has one sister and two brothers. 2. The merchant has three sons and four daughters. 3. There are twenty kinds of flowers in the garden. 4. The boy is doing two things at (*in*) one time. 5. Of the three brothers Alexander is the youngest. 6. The sailors see a thousand horsemen on the shore. 7. The royal house has a hundred rooms. 8. Two thousand sailors are on the shore of our sea. 9. The master has a thousand books. 10. Marcus and Balbus are very unlike *in* character.

[88.] 1. The enemy are a mile off. 2. The army is two miles off. 3. The forces of the enemy are two miles from the city. 4. The gardens are three miles from the harbour. 5. My brother is twenty-one years old to-day. 6. The winter is the gloomiest (*tristis*) part of the year. 7. My youngest sister is four years old. 8. Your house is five miles from ours. 9. The ships are a mile from the harbour. 10. The garden is two hundred feet (*acc.*) long, a hundred wide.

## SECTION 35.

## ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1st. Prīmus.	10th. Dēcīmus.
2d. Secundus (or Alter).	11th. Ūndecīmus.
3d. Tertius.	12th. Duodecīmus.
4th. Quartus.	13th. Tertius decīmus.
5th. Quīntus.	20th. Vicēsīmus.
6th. Sextus.	21st. Ūnus et vicēsīmus.
7th. Septīmus.	100th. Centēsīmus.
8th. Octāvus.	1000th. Millēsīmus.
9th. Nōnus.	

All these are declined like *bonus*.

[89.] 1. Puer quīntum Caesaris librum legit. 2. Hōrā diēi decimā Mārcus domum redit. 3. Quīntus dē adventū tertiæ legiōnis Caesarem certiorem facit. 4. Septimā noctis horā Caesar omnibus cōpiīs castrīs exit. 5. Caesar in dextrō cornū decimam, in sinistrō sextam, legiōnem habet. 6. Hostēs septimō decimō diē mīlia passuum duo absunt. 7. Caesar trīgintā, Pompēius quīnquāgintā, nāvēs habet. 8. Puer centēsīmam pecūniæ partem frātrī dat. 9. Mārcus prīmus, Balbus secundus, Quīntus tertius est. 10. Millēsīmam partem Mārcō, centēsīmam Balbō, dat.

[90.] 1. My brother is often first, sometimes second. 2. Caesar often praises the seventh legion. 3. A thousand birds are singing on the top of the oak. 4. The king gives the fifth part to the queen. 5. The soldiers return on the one and twentieth day. 6. The unhappy boy is five miles from home. 7. Yes-

terday he *was* seventh, to-day he is fourth. 8. An hour is a very small part of a year. 9. A few horse-men overcome a thousand enemies. 10. The ninth legion is always very brave. 11. At the sixth hour of the day the enemy return. 12. Marcus is older than his sister by three years.

#### XIV. *Dates in Early English History.*

Annō quīnquāgēsīmō quīntō ante Christum nātum Caesar primum in Britanniam vēnit, neque tamen diū in īnsulā nostrā manet. Deinde proximō annō iterum cum cōpiīs vēnit. Post paucōs autem mēnsēs cōpiās redūcit. Annō quadrāgēsīmō tertiō post Christum nātum Claudius, imperātor Rōmānus, in Britanniam venit, et tōtam paulātim īnsulam in suam potestātem Rōmānī redigunt. Annōs circiter trecentōs quīnquāgintā Rōmānī īnsulam tenent. Viās sternunt, castra mūniunt, domōs villāsque aedificant, frūmentum serunt, mūrō ingentī ferās Calēdoniae gentēs ab incursiōnibus prohibent; pācem Britannīs dant. Annō autem circiter quadringentēsīmō decimō Rōmānī legiōnēs suās redūcunt. Annō quadringentēsīmō quadrāgēsīmō nōnō Anglī, mājōrēs nostrī, primum nāvibus īnsulam capiunt.

## SECTION 36.

THE VERB **Esse**, TO BE.INDICATIVE MOOD. — *Present Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |                |                                 |                               |
|----------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. 1st Person. | <b>S</b> um, <i>I am.</i>       | <b>S</b> umus, <i>we are.</i> |
| 2. 2d Person.  | Es, <i>thou art or you are.</i> | Estis, <i>you are.</i>        |
| 3. 3d Person.  | Est, <i>he, she, or it, is.</i> | Sunt, <i>they are.</i>        |
- Es* translates "you are" only when *one* person is spoken to.

[91.] 1. Frātre meō nōn tribus annīs mājor sum. 2. Ego sum mīles, tū nauta es. 3. Ego omnibus cīvibus cārus sum: tē omnēs culpant. 4. Puer piger es, et patrī tuō dissimillimus. 5. Mīlītēs hieme vīgintī nāvēs aedificant. 6. Dextrō pede claudus sum, et sinistrā aure surdus. 7. Ego quattuordecim, tū duodecim annōs nātus es. 8. Patrī simillima sum, mātī dissimillima. 9. Optimī cīvēs estis; vōs omnēs laudant. 10. Nōs mīlītēs sumus, vōs nautae estis. 11. Māne legiō decima ad urbem redit. 12. Mīlītēs nostrī omnium fortissimī esse dīcuntur. 13. Athēnae ā Spartā centum quīnquāgintā mīlia passuum absunt. 14. Verba magistrī animōs puerōrum ad mājōrem dīligentiam incitant.

[92.] 1. *We*<sup>1</sup> are in the garden to-day. 2. I am first, you are second. 3. *You* are a very brave soldier, and a consummate (*summus*) orator. 4. I am lame, you are deaf. 5. The ships return in the evening to (*ad*) the harbour. 6. The boys are now return-

<sup>1</sup> Words in *italics* are to be left out.

ing home. 7. *We* are tired; your conversation is not welcome. 8. *I* am the youngest of all. 9. *We* are at home, you are out of doors. 10. *I* am very unhappy; *my* father never praises me. 11. *We* are very sad to-day; *our* friends are very far away. 12. The very frequent lightning-flashes do not frighten the brave soldier. 13. You are very wise, we are not wise. 14. The harbour is two miles distant from the royal house. 15. The characters of young men and of old men are very unlike.

## SECTION 37.

THE VERB *Esse*, TO BE — (*Continued*).

*Imperfect Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Er <b>am</b> , <i>I was.</i>    | 1. Er <b>āmus</b> , <i>we were.</i>  |
| 2. Er <b>ās</b> , <i>you were.</i> | 2. Er <b>ātis</b> , <i>you were.</i> |
| 3. Er <b>at</b> , <i>he was.</i>   | 3. Er <b>ant</b> , <i>they were.</i> |

*Future Tense.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Er <b>ō</b> , <i>I shall be.</i>   | 1. Er <b>īmus</b> , <i>we shall be.</i> |
| 2. Er <b>is</b> , <i>you will be.</i> | 2. Er <b>ītis</b> , <i>you will be.</i> |
| 3. Er <b>it</b> , <i>he will be.</i>  | 3. Er <b>unt</b> , <i>they will be.</i> |

[93.] 1. Balbe et Mārce, amīcī meī cārissimī, herī ubi erātis? — In urbe, Quīnte, erāmus! 2. Quandō domī eris, mī Quīnte? — Quid! ego semper sum domī. 3. Herī Rōmæ eram, hodiē Flōrentiæ (in Florence) sum, crās Vērōnæ (in Verona) erō. 4. Ubi herī erās?



— *Ā Rōmā longē aberam.* 5. *Crās vīgintī quīnque nāvēs longae in portū māximō erunt.* 6. *Priamō, rēgī Trōjae (Troy), quīnquāgintā filiī et quīnquāgintā filiae erant.* 7. *Legiō decima longē fortissīma esse dīcitur.* 8. *Ubi vesperī erunt? — hōrā quīntā semper ad urbem redeunt.* 9. *Temporibus Serviī Tulliī octōgintā tria mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum erant.* 10. *Tū, Balbe, bonus puer es; vōs, Quīnte et Mārce, semper pigri eritis!*

[94.] 1. To-morrow I shall be at home: where will you be? 2. Where will *you* be in the winter? — *I* shall be in the city, Balbus! 3. *I* was yesterday in the royal gardens; to-morrow *I* shall be at home. 4. Your arrival was very welcome to all, my dearest Marcus! 5. Balbus, where were *you* yesterday? — *I* was in the country. 6. *You* were always very good boys. 7. In the summer our father will be in Italy, we boys shall be at home. 8. My friends, when will *you* be at home? — *We* shall be at home to-morrow. 9. The characters of the Gauls and Germans were very unlike. 10. *In* a few years the works of Caesar will be known to the boys. 11. Yesterday I was the first, you were second, Balbus was third. 12. Yesterday *you* were first, to-day *you* are third, to-morrow *you* will be fifth.



## SECTION 38.

THE VERB *Esse*, TO BE — (*Continued*).*Perfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. Fuī, *I have been*  
(or) *I was.*
2. Fuistī, *you have been*  
(or) *you were.*
3. Fuit, *he has been*  
(or) *he was.*

## PLURAL.

1. Fuīmus, *we have been*  
(or) *we were.*
2. Fuistis, *you have been*  
(or) *you were.*
3. Fuērunt } *they have been*  
and fuēre } (or) *they were.*

*Pluperfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. Fuēram, *I had been.*
2. Fuērās, *you had been.*
3. Fuērat, *he had been.*

## PLURAL.

1. Fuērāmus, *we had been.*
2. Fuērātis, *you had been.*
3. Fuērant, *they had been.*

*Future Perfect Tense.*

## SINGULAR.

1. Fučrō, *I shall have been.*
2. Fučris, *you will have been.*
3. Fučrit, *he will have been.*

## PLURAL.

1. Fučrīmus, *we shall have been.*
2. Fučrītis, *you will have been.*
3. Fučrint, *they will have been.*

[95.] 1. Athēnīs<sup>1</sup> saepissimē, Rōmae nunquam, fuimus. 2. Septima legiō saepe fuit omnium fortissima.

<sup>1</sup> "In" or "at" before the name of a town is not translated by a separate word. The town name is put in the *locative* case, which has the same form as the ablative, except in case of nouns in the singular of the first and second declensions, when it is the same as the genitive. So — *Athēnīs* (abl. of *Athēnae*), "in Athens"; *Carthāgine* (*Carthāgō*), "in Carthage"; *Rōmae*, "in Rome"; *Tarentī*, "in Tarentum."

3. Māne domī fuerant, vesperī forīs erant. 4. Duōs jam annōs, mī cārissime frāter, Rōmae fuistī; quandō domī eris? 5. Vōs, amīcī, quam ego Athēnīs saepius fuistis! 6. Rēbus in adversīs grātissima sorōrī fuerint verba frātris. 7. Tū, mī Balbe, frātrī meō optimus amīcus fueris! 8. Puerī in hortīs nostrīs saepissimē fuerant. 9. Quīntus jam sex annōs Rōmae fuerat. 10. Servī Athēnīs saepissimē esse dīcuntur. 11. Optimus puer semper fuerās, herī nōn erās bonus. 12. Balbus et fuit, et est, et semper erit, fīdissimus amīcus.

[96.] 1. You<sup>1</sup> have often been in Rome, Quintus! 2. My friends, you have very often been in Athens! 3. We shall be at home to-morrow. 4. I have been very often very unhappy. 5. We have been three days (acc.) in Athens. 6. The cold will have been very great in Rome. 7. You are very often out of doors: when will you be at home? 8. Few boys will have been more often in Rome. 9. You are and always will be a very lazy boy. 10. He had been already three hours (acc.) at home. 11. Your arrival will have been welcome to all. 12. I had been often in Rome, you had never been. 13. He is said to be very often in Rome. 14. The oak is two miles from our house. 15. I had been two years (acc.) in Rome, three in Athens.

<sup>1</sup> The pronouns which should be left out are no longer printed in *italics*. The endings of the verbs sufficiently express the person. A pronoun should not be used, unless there is particular emphasis, as in such a sentence as — I was at work, you were at play.

XV. *An Account of the Battle of Bannockburn.*

Rēx noster, piger homō et corporis voluptātibus dēditus, tandem, crēbris nostrōrum clādibus commōtus, exercitum comparat, et in finēs hostium iter facit. Rēx hostium, simul atque adventum nostrōrum intellegit, locum dēligit suis opportūnum, nostrīs inīquissimum. Suōs enim in humō siccā firmāque collocat; frontem tamen tergumque āgminis continentēs palūdēs cingunt. Sinistrā flūmen erat, dextrā castellum, colle praecipiti impositum. Et, quod nostrī equitibus praestant, crēbrās in palūde foveās facit. Solum enim effōdit, et insuper locum longuriīs crātibusque sternit: tum humum grāmenque inicit. Cālōnēs omnēs servōsque equitum post vicīnum collem collocat. Tum adventum nostrōrum exspectat.

XVI. *Bannockburn -- (Continued).*

Nostrī tandem sub vesperum adveniunt. Noctem nōn quiētī somnōque sed carminibus epulisque dant. Contrā hostēs silentiō opem divīnam precibus implōrant. Posterō diē dux hostium suōs tālibus verbīs ad pūgnam incitat. “Militēs! certāmen nōbīs hodiē prō liberīs et uxōribus, prō parentibus et patriā, est. Deus nōbīs aut victōriam aut mortem glōriōsam dat. Sī cui vīta glōriā cārior est, domum ex pūgnā excēdat!” Tum pūgna committitur. Prīmō peditēs sagittariī nostrī in aciem indūcuntur; sed equitēs hostium, incitātīs equīs, irruunt; et summā audaciā nostrōs gladiīs hastisque cōnfodiunt: nihil enim sagittariī praeter arcūs habent. Deinde equitēs nostrī submituntur; sed plērīque, in-

sidiarum ignārī, in foveās prōnī incidunt. Nostrīs conturbātīs, subitō cālōnēs servīque equitum in summō colle appārent. Nostrī autem, “Ēn, novus exercitus adest!” clāmantēs, terga vertunt, et fugā salūtem petunt.

## SECTION 39.

## THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

**Egō, I.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Egō, <i>I.</i>	Nōs, <i>we.</i>
Gen.	Meī, <i>of me.</i>	Nostrum or nostrī, <i>of us.</i>
Dat.	Mihī (mī), <i>to me.</i>	Nōbīs, <i>to us.</i>
Acc.	Mē, <i>me.</i>	Nōs, <i>us.</i>
Abl.	Mē (with ā), <i>by me.</i>	Nōbīs (with ā), <i>by us.</i>

**Tū, thou.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	Tū, <i>thou.</i>	Vōs, <i>you, ye.</i>
Gen.	Tuī, <i>of you.</i>	Vestrum or vestrī, <i>of you.</i>
Dat.	Tibī, <i>to you.</i>	Vōbīs, <i>to you.</i>
Acc.	Tē, <i>you.</i>	Vōs, <i>you.</i>
Abl.	Tē (with ā), <i>by you.</i>	Vōbīs (with ā), <i>by you.</i>

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.

## SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Nom.	———
Gen.	Suī, <i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Dat.	Sibī, <i>to himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Acc.	Sē (sēsē), <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Abl.	Sē (sēsē), with ā, <i>by himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive pronouns are formed from the stems of personal and reflexive pronouns.

meus, -a, -um (voc. sing. *mī*), *my, mine.*

tuus, -a, -um, *thy, thine.*

suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their.*

noster, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your, yours.*

[97.] 1. Nōbīs sunt centum librī, vōbīs librōrum duo mīlia. 2. Vōs nunquam nostrī immemorēs eritis, amīcī cārissimī! 3. Mī frāter, ubi es? — Adsum. 4. Semper tuī memor erō: tū meī semper fuistī memor. 5. Mārcus semper sē laudat: mē semper culpā. 6. Amīcī immemorēs nostrī rēbus in adversīs fuēre. 7. Mārcus suī nunquam, meī semper, immemor erat. 8. Paucī vestrum<sup>1</sup> amīcīs rēbus in adversīs aderant.<sup>2</sup> 9. Ego Rōmae; vōs, amīcī, Athēnīs erātis! 10. Mihi quīnque, tibi decem, librōs magister dat. 11. Puella cotīdiē sē flōribus ōrnat. 12. Frāter tuus duōbus annīs quam tū mājor est. 13. Nōs semper pauperibus adsumus, vōs nunquam. 14. Quid vōs terret, puellae? ego vōbīs brevī tempore aderō. 15. Ōrātor cīvibus pauperibus semper adest: bonus vir est, et suī immemor.

[98.] 1. You are never mindful of me, Balbus!  
2. *Your* father, boy, gives you very beautiful books!

<sup>1</sup> Notice that *nostrum* and *vestrum* are used (and not *nostrī*, *vestrī*) after *pars* (meaning "some"), *paucī*, *multī*, and such words.

<sup>2</sup> *Adsum* with dative means "to stand by some one," i.e. "to help."



3. *Our* slaves are dear to us, but *our* friends are dearer. 4. We are boys, you are old men. 5. Your letter, brother, was very welcome to me! 6. The mind is the better part of us. 7. To many of us is the oak known. 8. *Your* son is never praised by you. 9. When will the poet's song be known to you, boy? 10. I have already been often in Rome.

[99.] 1. The girl adorns herself with flowers. 2. Marcus is now building a house for himself. 3. The boys are always mindful of themselves. 4. Julia is praised by you, Cornelia by me. 5. The Germans were better in war than the Gauls. 6. There is not, Quintus, a better poet than you! 7. In the morning the girls adorn themselves, in the evening they read books. 8. My slaves have always been very faithful to me. 9. I always assist my friends. 10. My brother will always assist me.

## SECTION 40.

PRONOUNS — (*Continued*).

**Hīc**, *this*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Hīc	haec	hōc.	Hī	hae	haec.
Gen.	Hūjus	hūjus	hūjus.	Hōrum	hārum	hōrum.
Dat.	Huīc	huīc	huīc.	His	hīs	hīs.
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hōc.	Hōs	hās	haec.
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc.	His	hīs	hīs.



Ille, *that*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Ille	illa	illud.	Illī	illae	illa.
Gen.	Illius	illius	illius.	Illōrum	illārum	illōrum.
Dat.	Illī	illī	illī.	Illīs	illīs	illīs.
Acc.	Illum	illam	illud.	Illōs	illās	illa.
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō.	Illīs	illīs	illīs.

[100.] 1. Hīc puer dīves, ille pauper est. 2. Hīc quam ille multō dīvitior est. 3. Tibi tuī, mihi meī, flōrēs pulcherrimī sunt. 4. Hae rēs certae, illae in certae, erant. 5. Haec avis semper, illa nunquam, in silvīs canit. 6. Sapientia dīvitīs multīs partibus<sup>1</sup> melior est. 7. Hūjus virtūs, illius dīvitiae ab omnibus laudantur. 8. Multī vestrum semper fuērunt immemorēs nostrī. 9. Mārcus et Quīntus frātrēs fuērunt: ille ("the former," i.e. Marcus) quam hīc paucīs annīs mājor fuit. 10. Hīc semper ille nunquam, vectīgālia tempore pendit. 11. Servus dominum dē adventū meō jam certiōrem facit. 12. Rēx annō rēgnī vīcēsīmō quartō māximōs et pulcherrimōs hortōs cīvibus dat. 13. Dissimillimī sunt duōrum puerōrum mōrēs: hīc fortis est, ille omnia timet. 14. Tibi amīcī rēbus in adversīs semper aderunt: amīcōrum semper memor es. 15. Ubi sunt Mārcus et Quīntus? — Hīc in hortō, ille in silvā est.

[101.] 1. I am known to this woman. 2. These woods are very large. 3. He praises these flowers. 4. This house was mine. 5. They give money to these

<sup>1</sup> Multis partibus, *by many degrees*, i.e. *a great deal*.

women. 6. That conversation was witty. 7. He gives a book to that boy. 8. Those rooms were very small. 9. The wind drives these ships. 10. I shall never help that man.

[102.] 1. These old men *are* rich, those are poor. 2. They do not praise the speech of that orator. 3. That orator will help these men. 4. This master often assists that boy. 5. The manners of that man are very bad. 6. This *man's* songs, that *man's* orations, are praised. 7. Those spurs were very sharp. 8. This man has seven, that eight, horses. 9. Birds very often sing in those woods. 10. This wood is eighteen miles from the city.

## SECTION 41.

### PRONOUNS — (*Continued*).

**Is, that, or he, she, it.**

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Is	ea	id.	Eī or iī	eae	ea.
Gen.	Ējus	ējus	ējus.	Eōrum	eārum	eōrum.
Dat.	Eī	eī	eī.	Eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs.
Acc.	Eum	eam	id.	Eōs	eās	ea.
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō.	Eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs.

**Idem, the same.**

	SINGULAR.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Īdem	eādem	īdem.
Gen.	Ējusdem	ējusdem	ējusdem.

Dat.	Eīdem	eīdem	eīdem.
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	īdem.
Abl.	Eōdem	eādem	eōdem.

## PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Eīdem or iīdem	eaedem	eādem.
Gen.	Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem.
Dat.	Eīsdem or iīsdem	eīsdem or iīsdem	eīsdem or iīsdem.
Acc.	Eōsdem	eāsdem	eādem.
Abl.	Eīsdem or iīsdem	eīsdem or iīsdem	eīsdem or iīsdem.

[103.] 1. Quīntus amat laudat-que sorōrēs suās. 2. Cornēlia ējus-que<sup>1</sup> frāter saepe domum meam veniunt. 3. Caesar in finēs hostium venit, eōrumque agrōs vastat. 4. Mārcus māgnam sibi domum aedificat, eam-que omnibus rēbus ōrnat (furnishes). 5. Dominus servōs suōs ad urbem vesperī mittit. 6. Gallī ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittunt, faciuntque eum dē suīs rēbus certiōrem. 7. Mors omnibus hominibus eadem est. 8. Hī duo puerī eōrundem mōrum esse ā magistrō dīcuntur. 9. Mārcus et Quīntus semper eadem laudant, eadem culpant. 10. Hīc senex sapientissimus est, et īdem<sup>2</sup> dīvitissimus. 11. Quid fidō amīcō, eōdemque sapientissimō, dulcius est? 12. Hīc ōrātor suās ōrātiōnēs semper laudat, Cicerōnis īdem culpāt. 13. Caesar vesperī omnibus cōpiīs flūmen trānsit: ea res nōn erat nōta hostibus. 14. Lēgātī ad castra veniunt: militēs dē adventū eōrum Caesarem certiōrem

<sup>1</sup> Literally, "and the brother of her," *i.e.* "and her brother."

<sup>2</sup> *Īdem*, lit. "the same man," *i.e.* "and also." In sentence 12 *īdem* means "and yet."

faciunt. 15. Caesar in finēs hostium venit, eōsque primō impetū superat.

[104.] 1. Where are my letters? — The slaves have them. 2. This bird always sings the same song. 3. The master praises the boy, and gives a beautiful book to him. 4. These orators are always praising themselves and their own orations. 5. Caesar sends the soldiers to the camp. 6. Young men and old men do not praise the same things. 7. These *things* are dear to you, those to me. 8. Marcus loves *his* friends, and always assists them. 9. Our army crosses the river: the enemy's army does the same. 10. At that (*is*) time (abl.) the Roman name was not known to the Gauls. 11. At the same time the soldiers inform Caesar. 12. The enemy's ambassadors come to Caesar at the same time.

## SECTION 42.

### PRONOUNS — (*Continued*).

#### *Iipse, self.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. Ipse	ipsā	ipsum.	Ipsī	ipsae	ipsā.
Gen. Ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus.	Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum.
Dat. Ipsī	ipsī	ipsī.	Ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs.
Acc. Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum.	Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā.
Abl. Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō.	Ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs.

**Iste**, *that of yours.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Iste	istă	istud.	Istī	istae	istă.
Gen.	Istius	istius	istius.	Istōrum	istārum	istōrum.
Dat.	Istī	istī	istī.	Istis	istis	istis.
Acc.	Istum	istam	istud.	Istōs	istās	istă.
Abl.	Istō	istă	istō.	Istis	istis	istis.

**Ipse**, *self*, is used with a pronoun or noun for emphasis, also alone to emphasize an omitted subject. It must be distinguished from *sē* the reflexive pronoun (p. 80).

a. Ipsa soror mē laudat. *My sister herself praises me.*

b. Soror sē laudat. *My sister praises herself.*

[c. Ipse librum legit. *He is reading the book himself.* *Sē* has no nominative.]

[105.] 1. Ipse dux sē nunquam, mīlitēs suōs semper, laudat. 2. Mārcus, optimus vir, frātribus pecūniam saepe dat; ipse paucīs rēbus contentus est. 3. Māxima pars nostrum trēs diēs duāsque noctēs in silvīs erat. 4. Neque ego pauperrimus sum, neque ipse tū dīvitissimus es. 5. Ubi sunt istī servī, mī frāter? domī nunquam sunt. 6. Caesar lēgātōs ad castra hostium eōdem tempore mittit. 7. Ista ōrātiō, Quīnte, rei pūblīcae nōn fuit ūtilissima! 8. Illa puella neque hunc neque illum librum legit. 9. Ille juvenis neque mihi, amīcō suō, neque ipsī frātrī adest. 10. Balbus neque māximus neque minimus nātū amīcōrum est. 11. Neque ipse venit, neque nōs dē suīs rēbus certiōrēs facit. 12. Hī librī meī sunt, Balbe. — Quid! illī librī tuī sunt! Meī, nōn-tuī, sunt.

[106.] 1. The queen herself decorates the table with flowers every day. 2. Marcus himself is at home;



Quintus, his brother, is in the city. 3. Those manners of yours, boy, will be welcome neither to *your* father nor *your* mother! 4. This poet often praises his own poems. 5. That song of yours, Balbus, is the worst of all! 6. The ambassadors inform the king himself of their arrival. 7. The ambassadors themselves sometimes come to our camp. 8. The slaves come in the morning: in the evening *he* sends them to the city. 9. You never assist those friends of yours. 10. Neither this *man*, nor that, is my friend.

## SECTION 43.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following nine adjectives have *īus* (*ūs*) in the genitive singular of all genders, and *ī* in the dative:—

<i>alius, alia, aliud, other.</i>	<i>ūnus, -a, -um, one.</i>
<i>nūllus, -a, -um, no one.</i>	<i>alter, altera, alterum, other of two.</i>
<i>sōlus, -a, -um, alone.</i>	<i>neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither of two.</i>
<i>tōtus, -a, -um, whole.</i>	<i>uter, utra, utrum, which of two?</i>
<i>ūllus, -a, -um, any.</i>	

**Totus, the whole.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. <b>Tōtus</b>	<b>tōta</b>	<b>tōtum.</b>	<b>Tōtī</b>	<b>tōtae</b>	<b>tōta.</b>
Gen. <b>Tōtīus</b>	<b>tōtīus</b>	<b>tōtīus.</b>	<b>Tōtōrum</b>	<b>tōtārum</b>	<b>tōtōrum.</b>
Dat. <b>Tōtī</b>	<b>tōtī</b>	<b>tōtī.</b>	<b>Tōtīs</b>	<b>tōtīs</b>	<b>tōtīs.</b>
Acc. <b>Tōtum</b>	<b>tōtam</b>	<b>tōtum.</b>	<b>Tōtōs</b>	<b>tōtās</b>	<b>tōta.</b>
Abl. <b>Tōtō</b>	<b>tōtā</b>	<b>tōtō.</b>	<b>Tōtīs</b>	<b>tōtīs</b>	<b>tōtīs.</b>

**Alius, other.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Ali <b>us</b>	ali <b>ă</b>	ali <b>ud.</b>	Ali <b>i</b>	ali <b>ae</b>	ali <b>ă</b>
Gen.	Ali <b>us</b>	ali <b>us</b>	ali <b>us.</b>	Ali <b>orum</b>	ali <b>arum</b>	ali <b>orum.</b>
Dat.	Ali <b>i</b>	ali <b>i</b>	ali <b>i.</b>	Ali <b>is</b>	ali <b>is</b>	ali <b>is.</b>
Acc.	Ali <b>um</b>	ali <b>am</b>	ali <b>ud.</b>	Ali <b>os</b>	ali <b>as</b>	ali <b>ă.</b>
Abl.	Ali <b>o</b>	ali <b>ā</b>	ali <b>o.</b>	Ali <b>is</b>	ali <b>is</b>	ali <b>is.</b>

When *alius* is repeated in the sentence, the first *alius* means "some," and the second "other." So *Alii regem, alii reginam, culpant* means "some blame the king, others the queen."

[107.] 1. Sex menses totos milites in castris erant. 2. Aliud pueris, aliud senibus gratum est. 3. Non me solum, sed ipsum etiam se, culpat. 4. Alii patri, alii matri suae, simillimi sunt. 5. Solum unum hoc culpat magister. 6. Alia de causa Marcum, alia Quintum, culpat. 7. Nobis neque naves erant aliae, neque milites alii. 8. Nullius carmina quam tua pulchriora sunt. 9. Legionem octavam totam hiemem in castris habet. 10. Totius anni vectigalia maxima erunt. 11. Ista verba neque patri neque magistrō grata erunt. 12. Non magistrō solum, sed etiam patri, isti mores molesti sunt. 13. Solus hic neque regem neque ipsam reginam timet. 14. His de causis non civibus solum, sed etiam militibus, rex curus est.

[108.] 1. Quintus has only one brother. 2. I alone assisted that boy. 3. The songs of no poet are better than yours. 4. In the whole of Italy the cold had been very great. 5. This *man* often praises himself, others never. 6. Marcus and other boys frighten their

sister by *their* shouts. 7. Books alone delight that old man. 8. Neither in winter nor in summer shall I be away from home. 9. Some come to the harbour, others remain in the city. 10. Not to me only, but to all the citizens, is the king dear. 11. Some praise this thing, others that. 12. The charge of the whole army frightens the enemy. 13. Some come to the camp, others Caesar sends to the river. 14. The name of one poet only is known to the boy. 15. The boy is already fourteen years old.

## SECTION 44.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES — (*Continued*).**Uter**, *which (of two)*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Uter	utră	utrum.	Utrī	utrae	utră.
Gen.	Utrīus	utrīus	utrīus.	Utrōrum	utrārum	utrōrum.
Dat.	Utrī	utrī	utrī.	Utrīs	utrīs	utrīs.
Acc.	Utrum	utram	utrum.	Utrōs	utrās	utră.
Abl.	Utrō	utrā	utrō.	Utrīs	utrīs	utrīs.

**Alter**, *the other (of two)*.

SINGULAR.			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Alter	altera	alterum.
Gen.	Alterīus	alterīus	alterīus.
Dat.	Alterī	alterī	alterī.
Acc.	Alterum	alteram	alterum.
Abl.	Alterō	alterā	alterō.

## PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	Alter <b>ī</b>	alter <b>ae</b>	alter <b>ă</b> .
Gen.	Alter <b>ōrum</b>	alter <b>ārum</b>	alter <b>ōrum</b> .
Dat.	Alter <b>īs</b>	alter <b>īs</b>	alter <b>īs</b> .
Acc.	Alter <b>ōs</b>	alter <b>ās</b>	alter <b>ă</b> .
Abl.	Alter <b>īs</b>	alter <b>īs</b>	alter <b>īs</b> .

*Alius, another (other).*

*Alter, the other (of two).*

*Cēterī, the others, the rest.*

[109.] 1. Rēx Agēsīlāus alterō pede claudus erat. 2. Alteram ex duābus legiōnibus Caesar ad castra mittit. 3. Mārcus et Quīntus domum redeunt; cēterī puerī in urbe manent. 4. Auxilium magistrī pigrō puerō grātissimum est. 5. Illī puerī quam cēterī nātū mājōrēs sunt. 6. Quīntus, vir optimus, omnia alterius causā facit. 7. Caesar virtutem tōtius legiōnis laudat. 8. Virtūs rēgis nōn ūnī solum legiōnī sed tōtī etiam exercituī nōta est. 9. Hīs dē causīs alterum puerum laudat, alterum culpat. 10. Utrī puērōrum mājor est dīligentia? 11. Pigerrimus ille puer saepissimē ā magistrō auxilium petit. 12. Aliī saepe auxilium petunt, aliī ipsī omnia faciunt. 13. Utra sorōrum pulchrior est? — Jūlia quam Cornēlia multō pulchrior esse dīcitur. 14. Balbus saepissimē domum meam venit: is filius alter Mārcī, meī amīcī cārissimī, est.

[110.] 1. The old man is deaf in one ear. 2. To which of the two boys does he give a reward? 3. Some are present, others are absent. 4. One is present, the other is absent. 5. Marcus is present, the rest are absent. 6. I have two brothers; the one is older, the

other younger than I. 7. Which of the *two* legions is said to be the braver? 8. Some boys always *ask for help*, others never ask for help. 9. The courage of the soldiers is very great. 10. The courage of our soldiers is greater than *that* of the enemy. 11. Neither *my* brother nor *my* sister is older than you. 12. Neither Balbus nor Marcus is away from home in the winter. 13. The king himself is a very brave soldier. 14. One of the sons is very like (to) his father, the other is very unlike. 15. Of the two boys, the one is twelve, the other thirteen years old.

## SECTION 45.

THE PRONOUNS — (*Continued*).*The Relative Pronoun.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
Nom.	Quī	quae	quod	<i>who, which.</i>
Gen.	Cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	<i>whose, of which.</i>
Dat.	Cuī	cuī	cuī	<i>to whom, to which.</i>
Acc.	Quem	quam	quod	<i>whom, which.</i>
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō	<i>by whom (with prep. ā), by which.</i>

## PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
Nom.	Quī	quae	quae	<i>who, which.</i>
Gen.	Quōrum	quārum	quōrum	<i>whose, of which.</i>
Dat.	Quibus	quibus	quibus	<i>to whom, to which.</i>
Acc.	Quōs	quās	quae	<i>whom, which.</i>
Abl.	Quibus	quibus	quibus	<i>by whom (with prep. ā), by which.</i>



*Interrogative Pronoun.*

The interrogative pronoun *quis*, who, which, what? is declined as the relative *quī*, except in nom. sing., which has *quis*, *quae*, *quid*, and acc. sing., which has *quem*, *quam*, *quid*.

[111.] 1. Flūctūs, quī nāvem in portum agunt, māximī sunt. 2. Puer, cūjus pater dux erat, ipse dux erit. 3. Ōrātor eōs laudat, ā quibus ipse laudātur. 4. Hic est puer ille, cū magister māximum praeium dat. 5. Aliī virtūtem, aliī sapientiam, ōrātōris laudant. 6. Sapiēns nōn eōs laudat, quibus pecūnia quam sapientia cārior fuit. 7. Dux hostium tōtum exercitum ad mare dūcit. 8. Caesar māne duās legiōnēs equitēs-que omnēs castrīs ēdūcit. 9. Vesperī idem cōpiās ad castra redūcit. 10. Ducem, quem multīs verbīs laudat ōrātor, cēterī cīvēs culpant. 11. Hī puerī, quōs magistrī semper culpant, trīstissimī sunt. 12. Nōn eum sapientēs laudant, cūjus dīvitiae māgnae sunt, sed quī suīs rēbus contentus est. 13. Caesar militēs, quōs māne castrīs ēdūcit, vesperī ad castra redūcit. 14. Quis huīc puerō aderit, quī nihil alterius causā facit?

[112.] 1. The old man, who was already deaf, is now lame. 2. The slaves, who go out in the morning, return in the evening. 3. The girl, who helps her mother, is praised by all. 4. This is the poet, whose works all *men* are reading. 5. This is the merchant, to whom the leader gives money. 6. To which of the *two* does he give the better books? 7. Caesar leads the soldiers to the camp. 8. The leader leads out the cavalry *from* the camp. 9. The king leads back two

legions to the camp. 10. All men love those *men* by whom they are loved. 11. Of the leaders the one *is* the wiser, the other is the braver. 12. The poet whom all men praise is not always the best. 13. The slaves, whom their master blames, are very faithful. 14. Wisdom is much better than riches. 15. Those (*is*) are not always the best soldiers, whose words are the bravest.

### XVII. *Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.*—I.

Graeci post excidium Trōjae in patriam revertunt. In hīs erat Ulixēs. Multum ille errat, multās terrās videt, multa maria trānsit. Prīmō annō cum duodecim comitibus in Siciliam īnsulam vēnit. Siciliam autem illō tempore nōn hominēs, sed ferī gigantēs, habitābant. Cyclōpēs eōrum nōmen erat. Haec rēs Ulixī nōn nōta est. Ulixēs igitur et comitēs ējus ad specum Polyphēmī veniunt. Is ferōcissimus omnium Cyclōpum est, idemque cēterīs corpore ingentior: ūnum modo oculum in mediā fronte habet. In specū, igitur, Graeci lāc et cāseōs laetī inveniunt. Ipse autem nōn adest, sed ovēs in montibus pāscit. Brevī tempore ipse Polyphēmus ad specum cum ovibus revertit. Prīmum māximō atque gravissimō saxō jānuam specūs claudit. Deinde ovēs mulget, et lignīs ignem facit. Tum dēmum Ulixem duodecimque ējus comitēs cōspicit.

(Continued on p. 102.)

### *Recapitulatory Exercises.*

- E. 1. Hīc filium, ille servum, ad urbem mittit.
2. Rēx mercātōrem laudat, eīque māgnam rēgīnae imā-

ginem dat. 3. Quīntus tibi nōtus est: is omnium amīcōrum mihi longē cārissimus est. 4. Ubi est illa domus, quam tuus pater in hāc urbe aedificat? 5. Lēgātī, quōs hostēs mittunt, jam in castrīs sunt. 6. Magister puerōs laudat, eīsque librōs dat. 7. Rēgī et rēgīnae eadem virtūs eadem sapientia fuit. 8. Hī puerī sē pessimīs amīcīs semper circumdant. 9. Rēx ad castra hostium cōpiās dūcit, agrōsque eōrum vastat. 10. Uter frātrum māior est? — Alexander nōn solum nātū māior, sed multō etiam sapientior, est.

F. 1. The king himself informs me of these matters. 2. This legion has three thousand soldiers. 3. The best part of us is not the body, but the mind. 4. The ambassadors were three miles from the camp. 5. The works of Cicero are neither very difficult nor very easy. 6. Girls and boys are often not pleased by the same things. 7. I am to-day twenty-one years old. 8. The courage of the seventh legion is often praised by Caesar. 9. I am older than you by two whole years. 10. Many thousands of birds sing in these woods in summer.

G. 1. Dux sē multā ōrātiōne laudat; mīlitēs suōs īdem culpat. 2. Rēx lēgātōs dē suīs rēbus certiōrēs facit, eōsque ad castra mittit. 3. Ubi sunt illae avēs, quae in conclāvī tuō semper canunt? 4. Hīc puer, quem magister hodiē culpat, semper ā mātře laudātur. 5. Hī mīlitēs, quibus vīta quam victōria cārīor est, domī manent; cēterī ēdūcuntur. 6. Aliī in equitēs, aliī in pedestrēs cōpiās, ācrem impetum faciunt. 7. Flōrum aliī aliīs colōrēs multō pulchriōrēs sunt. 8. Aliī servōs suōs mittunt, aliī neque ipsī veniunt

neque nōs certiōrēs faciunt. 9. Māgnus quercuum, quae in hortīs nostrīs sunt, numerus mediā aestāte grātissimus est. 10. Huīc puerō neque pater neque māter pecūniam dat; illī pater nōn pecūniam solum sed multās aliās rēs interdum dat.

H. 1. There are a thousand horsemen in that wing of the army. 2. In summer the days, in winter the nights, are the longer. 3. To few men is wisdom dear, but all love riches. 4. These soldiers have no hope of victory; they are frightened by the enemy. 5. Nobody's horses were swifter than mine. 6. This oak is very welcome to us all in summer. 7. The courage of these *men*, the wisdom of those, is praised by all. 8. Those birds make their little homes on the tops of the oaks. 9. Of all his friends Quintus was by far the dearest to the king. 10. The master blames not you and me only, but all the other boys also.

I. 1. Nothing was more pleasant to me in my trouble than this letter of my mother's. 2. That boy's manners are said by all the masters to be very bad. 3. These boys, who go out from home in the morning, always come back home in the evening. 4. These two men are very rich, the rest are very poor. 5. Of the *two* brothers the one will be very like his father (dat.), the other very like his mother. 6. The girl, whose brother is known to you, is said to be very pretty. 7. Where are my brother's books, which were in your room? He has not *any* others. 8. To this slave, who has been very faithful, his master often gives a reward. 9. The characters of the boys are very unlike; this *one* is always, that *one* never, satisfied. 10. The life of many



animals is longer than *that* of men. 11. He has two sisters: the one is in Rome, the other is at home. 12. This ship, which is now in harbour, is by far the fastest of all.

## SECTION 46.

## VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD.—*Present Tense.*

**Amāre**, *to love.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. Am <b>ō</b> , <i>I love.</i>	1. Am <b>āmus</b> , <i>we love.</i>
2. Am <b>ās</b> , <i>you love.</i>	2. Am <b>ātis</b> , <i>you love.</i>
3. Am <b>at</b> , <i>he loves.</i>	3. Am <b>ant</b> , <i>they love.</i>

To this conjugation belong all the verbs with the endings *-at* and *-ant*. Those already in use are:—

aedificāre	dēlectāre	ōrnāre
circumdare <sup>1</sup>	incitāre	superāre
culpāre	laudāre	vastāre
dare <sup>1</sup>		

Nōne mē amās? *Do you not love me?*

Num mē amās? *You do not love me, do you?*

[113.] 1. Cotīdiē, Balbe, pauperibus pecūniam dō. Num mē culpās? 2. Quid! num tū mē, veterrimum amīcum, culpās? 3. Semper puerōs ad mājōrem dīligentiam incitāmus. 4. Nōne nōs, quī vōbīs semper fīdissimī fuimus, laudātis? 5. Ego patris epistolās expectō: quid tū, Balbe, expectās? 6. Quid! num

<sup>1</sup> These two verbs form their perfects differently from *amāre*.



vōs, militēs, adventum hostium expectātis? 7. Nōn eum laudō, cui m̄ximae dīvitiae sunt, sed quī sapientissimus est. 8. Ūnī ex omnibus Sequānī nihil eārum rērum faciunt, quās cēterī faciunt.

[114.] 1. I blame not you only, but your brother also. 2. We all love *our* brothers and sisters. 3. You are not, are you, Quintus, expecting a letter? 4. Boys, do you not love *your* fathers and mothers? 5. You do not blame me, do you? — I neither blame nor praise you. 6. I do not blame you, my friends; I blame you, Marcus! 7. You are not, are you, soldiers, building this ship? 8. Are you not expecting Caesar's arrival, soldiers? 9. What! do you not praise me? — I do not praise you. 10. Mārcus blames not himself, but his friends.

## SECTION 47.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION — (*Continued*).

ACTIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Imperfect and Future Tenses.*

Imperfect: Amā**bam**, *I was loving.*

Future: Amā**bō**, *I shall love.*

For the complete tenses, see p. 146.

[115.] 1. Tibi dabō duōs pulcherrimōs librōs. — Quid tū mihi dabis? 2. Militēs nostrī nōn hās solum, sed mājōrēs etiam cōpiās, aliquandō fugābunt. 3. Nihil aliud quam<sup>1</sup> animōs cīvium ad bellum incitābās.

<sup>1</sup> You *were doing* nothing but, etc.

4. Nōnne, milītēs, hostēs superābitis ? — Nihil aliud quam hostēs fugāmus. 5. Onus, quod servus in capite portābat, gravissimum erat. 6. Num tū laudābis hominem, cūjus pessimī mōrēs omnibus nōtī sunt ? 7. Laudābō nōn puerum solum, sed patrem etiam magistrōsque. 8. Dux hostium urbem nostram altissimō aggere circumdābat. 9. Magister mē herī laudābat, hodiē culpat, crās laudābit. 10. Nōnne tē verba magistrī aliquandō ad mājōrem diligentiam incitābunt ? 11. Caesar equitēs omnēs in dextrō cornū collocābat. 12. Hōc gravissimum onus portābam, neque<sup>1</sup> fessus eram.

[116.] 1. The ships were carrying three thousand soldiers. 2. The soldiers will put to flight the forces of the enemy. 3. I love you, my dearest mother, and shall always love you. 4. Where are those slaves who were carrying this burden ? 5. I will give you a large sum of money some day. 6. This slave will some day be a master himself. 7. He will place part of the cavalry on the right wing. 8. I shall never carry a heavier burden. 9. Will you not give (to) me my books ? 10. Caesar was placing the seventh legion on the left wing. 11. You will not, will you, expect a letter every day ? 12. Your courage will urge on the rest, soldiers ! 13. Neither was I praising you yesterday, nor shall I praise you to-day. 14. The king leads out a part of his forces in the summer. 15. You, soldiers, will overcome and put to flight the enemy !

<sup>1</sup> And yet I was not.

## SECTION 48.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION — (*Continued*).*Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses.*

Perfect:                Amāvī, *I have loved, or I loved.*

Pluperfect:        Amāvēram, *I had loved.*

Future Perfect: Amāverō, *I shall have loved.*

[117.] 1. Nēmō nōs expectāvit; omnēs nostrī immemorēs fuistis. 2. Nōne haec gravissima onera portāvimus? 3. Nōne militēs nostrī fortiter pūgnāverunt? 4. Rēx et rēgīna paucōs solum annōs rēgnāvēre. 5. Nōne ingentem nāvium numerum aedificāveritis? 6. Equitēs quattuor tōtās hōrās fortissimē pūgnāverant. 7. Nēmō quam tū fortius pūgnāverit, Quīnte! 8. Brevī tempore trēs nāvēs longās aedificāverimus. 9. Puerum neque ego culpāvī, neque tū laudāvistī. 10. Eōs laudābō, quī fortissimē pūgnāverint. 11. Militēs nostrī summā virtūte pūgnāverant. 12. Hostēs legiōnēs octāvam et nōnam fugāvērunt.

[118.] 1. I have fought bravely, but nobody praises me. 2. With one charge they had put the enemy to flight. 3. The slaves have furnished the house with all things. 4. No one will have fought more bravely. 5. The queen had already reigned two years (acc.). 6. Your letter, Alexander, will have delighted your father. 7. We have built five war-ships. 8. Your help will some day be very welcome to your mother. 9. The father was very often giving money to his son. 10. The leader has posted some *men* on the left,

others on the right wing. 11. You have carried very bravely a very heavy burden. 12. They had overcome the left wing of the army. 13. You will have incited the boy to greater diligence. 14. The king has reigned twenty years. 15. Our *men* will have laid waste the enemy's lands.

## SECTION 49.

VERBS: FIRST CONJUGATION—(*Continued*).

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE: PARTS OF THE IMPERATIVE.

Am **āre**, *to love*.

Am **ā**, *love thou, love* (speaking to one person).

Am **āte**, *love ye, love* (speaking to more than one person).

[119.] 1. Quis potest istōs mōrēs, puer, laudāre? Nēmō potest. 2. Servī hōc gravissimum onus manibus portāre nōn possunt. 3. Amā frātrēs, Quīte! Quid dulcius esse potest, quam frātrēs amāre? 4. Ōrnatē, puellae, mēnsam flōribus!—Nihil aliud quam mēnsam ōrnāmus. 5. Dux equitēs agrōs hostium vastāre jubet. 6. Caesar decimam legiōnem adventum suum expectāre jubet. 7. Pūgnāte fortissimē, milites! Hostēs iam adsunt. 8. Fugāte equitēs, milites!—Nihil difficilius esse potest quam hōs fugāre equitēs.

[120.] 1. Nobody is able to carry all the books. 2. Fight bravely, soldiers! The leader will praise you. 3. He orders the cavalry to urge on their horses. 4. The ambassadors come to Caesar and ask for help. 5. They have fought more bravely to-day than yesterday. 6. Nobody can blame the king and

queen. 7. He orders me to give *him* wine. 8. Give (to) me Cicero's speeches, boy! 9. They order the slaves to carry the burden to the city. 10. They are not able to put the enemy to flight.

### XVIII. *Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.* — II.

[Translate again No. XVII., p. 94, before doing this.]

Polyphēmus statim Ulixem comitēsque ejus interrogat, "Estis mercatōrēs an praedōnēs?" Gravis vōx Cyclōpis omnēs māgnoperē terret. Respondet Ulixēs "Graeci sumus: tempestās nōs ā cursū nostrō in istam insulam dēicit. Nōne tū, quī māgnus homō es et validissimus, nōs, hospitēs tuōs, ut mōs est Graecōrum, benīgnē tractābis? grātissimī in tē erimus. Sī tamen in nōs crūdēlis fueris, deī, quibus hospitēs cūrae sunt, crūdēlītātem tuam vindicābunt." Sed Polyphēmus, rīdēns, "Deī vestri," inquit, "mē nōn terrent; ego enim et rōbastior et potentior multō sum, quam illi." Tum duōs comitēs Ulixī māgnā vī in saxum jactat. Postquam membra eōrum lacerāvit, cēnam sibi parat; carnem et ossa hūmāna dēvorat. "Quam mē dēlectat," exclāmat, "hōrum Graeculōrum carō! ūndecim supersunt: multōs diēs praeclārissimē cēnābō." Audiunt Graeci; gelidus sūdor per membra mānat.



## SECTION 50.

## VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION.

**Mōnērē**, *to advise.**Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses.*Present: Mon **eō**, *I advise.*Imperfect: Mon **ēbam**, *I was advising.*Future: Mon **ēbō**, *I shall advise.*

To this conjugation belong the verbs already used with endings *-et* and *-ent*. These are: *habeō*, *jubeō*, *maneō*, *terreō*, *timeō*, *videō*.

[121.] 1. Ego mare timeō; tē neque flūctūs neque ventī terrent. 2. Timēbant eōs, quī saepe exercitūs suōs superāvērunt. 3. Hī hominēs multam pecūniam illī mercātōrī dēbēbant. 4. Nostri mīlitēs fortissimē pūgnāre dēbent. 5. Num nōs nāvēs aedificāre jubētis? Jam fessī sumus. 6. Rēs adversae animum fortis illīus virī nōn terrēbunt. 7. Amīcus meus trēs annōs tōtōs Rōmae manēbit. 8. Puerī saepe clāmōribus hās parvās puellās terrēbant. 9. Nōne vidēs hōs servōs, quī nāvēs aedificant? 10. Brevī tempore, mīlitēs, nōn equitēs solum sed tōtum etiam exercitum superāveritis!

[122.] 1. Do you not see, my friends, the enemy's ships in the harbour? 2. Yesterday *they* were remaining at home; to-morrow they will not remain. 3. I often see your slaves in the city. 4. You ought to await *your* father's arrival. 5. The king was owing a large sum of money to the merchant. 6. You do

not fear the enemy's shouts, soldiers, do you? 7. Caesar's arrival will frighten the king of the enemy. 8. They have fought very bravely, nor did they fear the enemy. 9. They were ordering the slaves to decorate the table. 10. Do you not see the soldiers, who are building the ships? 11. This war will delight the soldiers, *it* will frighten the citizens. 12. You will not, will you, fear the enemy, soldiers? Have you not often overcome them?

## SECTION 51.

VERBS: SECOND CONJUGATION — (*Continued*).

*Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses.*

Perfect:            Monuī, *I have advised, I advised.*

Pluperfect:       Monuēram, *I had advised.*

Future Perfect: Monuērō, *I shall have advised.*

Three of the verbs of this conjugation already in use, *jubeō*, *maneō*, and *videō*, do not form their perfects, and therefore their future perfects and pluperfects, like *moneō*.

[123.] 1. Soror mea optimē valuit, ego nōn valuī. 2. Omnēs tacuistis, amīcī: num illum ōrātōrem timuistis? 3. Pater tuus hodiē melius valēre dīcitur. 4. Saepe jam monuistī, saepe culpāvistī, puerōs. 5. Omnēs tacēbant: nēmō ōrātōrem laudābat. 6. Fluctūs, quōs hae puellae timuerant, illōs puerōs dēlectābant. 7. Puerōs cotīdiē in hortīs aestāte vidēbam. 8. Illī puerī miserās avēs clāmōribus terruerint. 9. Magister

puerōs omnēs iterum atque iterum tacēre jubēbat. 10. Tacē,<sup>1</sup> puer : sermōne tuō jam fessī sumus. 11. Hī puerī nōn solum nihil habent, sed multam etiam pecūniam dēbent. 12. Valē iterum atque iterum, amīce cārissime ! Quandō tē vidēbō ?

[124.] 1. I am always ordering the boy to be silent. 2. The arrival of the master frightened the slaves. 3. My mother was better yesterday. 4. Those girls feared the waves of the sea. 5. Be silent!—In a short time I will be silent. 6. Good-bye again and again, Quintus ! I shall expect a letter. 7. Can he not be silent ? I am tired. 8. The words of the ambassadors frightened the citizens. 9. The king will have feared the words of the soldiers. 10. You will see the rest of *them* every day. 11. It is time to be silent : we are all tired. 12. The shouts of the enemy had frightened neither leader nor soldiers. 13. You have never praised me. — You have never been silent. 14. I have warned the boy again and again : he cannot hold his tongue. 15. Good-bye, my brother, I shall see you again *in* a short time.

### XIX. *Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.*—III.

Idem facit saevus ille Polyphēmus posterō diē, et post cēnam specū excēdit, et pecora in montibus pāscit ; sed prius saxō, ut anteā, ingentī jānuam specūs claudit. Tum Ulixēs comitēsque ējus dēliberābant, “Quōmodo nōs ab hōc crūdēlissimō mōnstrō liberābimus ? Nōne omnēs lacerābit, omnēs dēvorābit ?” Tandem

<sup>1</sup> Imperative, see p. 155.

Ulixēs callidissimum cōsilium comitibus aperit, quod omnēs laetī probābant. Vesperī, ut mōs ējus erat, Cyclōps in specum revertit. Tum Ulixēs poculum vīnō, quod sēcum portāverat, implet, et Polyphēmō dat. “Bibe,” inquit, “mī Polyphēme cārissime; hōc vīnum optimum est.” Bibit Polyphēmus. “Vērū est quod dīcis, hōc vīnum optimum est. Dā mihi, ōrō tē, amīce, alterum poculum vīnī! Sed quid tibi nōmen est, parve homō?” Tum Ulixēs, postquam poculum iterum implēvit, “Ō Polyphēme,” inquit, “rārū nōmen mihi est, Nēmō nōmen est.” “Mī cārissime Nēmō,” respondet rīdēns Polyphēmus, “optimum vīnum mihi dās, ego tibi hōc praeimium dabō; tē postremum omnium ad cēnam mihi parābō.”

## SECTION 52.

## VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses.*

**Regēre, to rule.**

Present: Reg **ō**, *I rule.*

Imperfect: Reg **ēbam**, *I was ruling.*

Future: Reg **am**, *I shall rule.*

To this conjugation belong the following verbs, which have already been used: —

1. Agō, canō, dūcō (ēdūcō, redūcō), lēgō, mittō, pendō, petō. 2. Faciō.

[125.] 1. Aliī multa dīcent, aliī tacēbunt. 2. Num tū semper hanc urbem incolēs? 3. Rēx cīvēs vectīgā

lia pendere jubēbat. 4. Puer opera Cicerōnis legere dēbet. 5. Librōs, quōs semper in manibus habēs, legis nunquam. 6. Nēmō verba senum illōrum sapientium contemnere dēbet. 7. Tibi, puella, quōs habeō pulcherrimōs flōrēs dabō! 8. Hostēs tēla omnis generis in equitēs nostrōs jaciēbant. 9. Hostēs semper tēla in nostrōs jaciunt, neque multōs interficiunt. 10. Quīntus frātre cotidiē dē omnibus rēbus certiōrem faciet. 11. Caesar partem equitum in monte collocābit, partem ad flūmen mittet. 12. Nōne aliquandō hunc librum legēs? tē dēlectābit.

[126.] 1. The waves will drive the ships on to the shore. 2. The enemy will not kill many with their darts. 3. Many birds will be singing in our gardens in summer. 4. Soldiers, you will throw your darts in vain! 5. When will you be silent? your conversation is not welcome. 6. What were they saying to you? — They said nothing. 7. We inhabit a very famous and very beautiful city. 8. You ought not to despise your brother's words. 9. The darts of the enemy were very sharp. 10. You are very well, are you not? — I am very well. 11. Our men were killing two thousand of the enemy. 12. Caesar was leading out all the cavalry *from* the camp. 13. I shall read the book again to-morrow. 14. Will you send your slave to (*ad*) me some day? 15. Good-bye, brother; good-bye, sisters! the ship is now in harbour.



## SECTION 53.

VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION — (*Continued*).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Future, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses.*

Perfect: Rēxī, *I have ruled, I ruled.*

Pluperfect: Rēxēram, *I had ruled.*

Future Perfect: Rēxērō, *I shall have ruled.*

By no means all the verbs of this conjugation form their perfects (and consequently the future perfect and pluperfect) like *regō*. Some of these appear in the following exercise in *italics*, but only regular perfects are introduced into the English into Latin exercises.

[127.] 1. Ille senex octōgintā sex annōs jam vīxit. 2. Illī nautae nāvem suam optimē rēxerint. 3. Hostēs gravissima tēla in nostrōs jēcērunt. 4. Rēgem dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū certiōrem statim fēcērunt. 5. Caesar militēs mājōrēs, quam jam fēcerant, nāvēs statim aedificāre jubēbat. 6. Nostrī omnēs, quī illam urbem incolēbant, hominēs interfēcērunt. 7. Quid ūtilius esse potest quam bonōs librōs legere? 8. Nōn ā mē, sed ā frātre tuō, Quīnte, auxilium pete! 9. Contemnite dīvitiās, cīvēs; sapientiam amāte! 10. Quid trīstius esse potest quam nunquam valēre? 11. Prōrae ingentēs nostrārū nāvium hostēs terruērunt. 12. Frāter tuus tē valēre jubet; pater eum exspectat. 13. Pende quam mihi dēbēs pecūniam! — Neque dēbeō neque pendam. 14. Multīs pue-

rīs tacēre rēs difficillima esse dicitur. 15. Quid rēgī dīxistī? — Eadem, quae jam tibi, dīxī. 16. Nōn ā tē, sed ab amīcīs meīs, auxilium petam. 17. Nōn Quīntō solum sed omnibus etiam amīcīs pecūniam dēbuistī. 18. Illī ōrātōrēs iterum atque iterum eadem dīxēre. 19. Hīc rēx cīvēs optimē rēxit, fuitque omnibus cārisimus. 20. Nōne mox tacēbis, ōrātōr? — Nōn jam (*yet*) omnia quae dēbuī dīxī.

[128.] 1. My friend lived thirty-three years (*acc.*) 2. Caesar had led out three legions at once *from* the camp. 3. What did you say to your brother? — I said only a few words. 4. The sailor steered (*regō*) the ship with one hand. 5. The sailors had steered the ships very well. 6. You ought not to ask for help. 7. They cannot inhabit the same city always. 8. You will soon read Caesar's works. 9. The slaves were killing their master. 10. The sailors will soon throw the flowers into the sea. 11. The king led his forces at once to the river. 12. What, my friends, did you say to that merchant? 13. Caesar will have led the army back to-morrow. 14. The king will have lived fifty years to-morrow. 15. Despise the words and the shouts of the enemy, sailors!

#### XX. *Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.* — IV.

Polyphēmum, quī nōn ūnum et alterum solum sed plūrima etiam pocula vīnī biberat, altus somnus opprimat. Ulixēs autem jam antea pālum, quem in specū invēnerat, acuerat, et candentem fēcerat. Hunc candentem pālum in ūnum oculum Polyphēmī intrūsit, et ita Cyclōpem excaecāvit. Is, postquam dolōrem sēn-

sit, omnium Cyclōpum auxilium implōrāvit. Cyclōpēs igitur ad specum vērunt, et interrogāverunt, “Quis tē, Ō Polyphēme, necāre cupit?” Respondet ille, “Nēmō mē necāre cupit, amīcī.” Exclāmant Cyclōpēs, “Cūr auxilium nostrum implōrāvistī, sī nēmō tē necāre cupit!” Tum domum revertērunt. Polyphēmus autem frūstrā Graecōs tōtō specū capere cupīvit; semper ex manibus ējus sē ēripiunt. “Ubi estis, amīcī?” exclāmat. Graecī callidē tacēbant. Posterō diē mōre suō Cyclōps saxum, quod jānuam claudēbat, āmovet, et ovēs ēmittit. Ulixēs autem comitēs suōs sub alvīs ovium religāverat; ipse sē manibus sub alvō arietis tenēbat. Ita omnēs fēlīciter carcere excēdunt.

## SECTION 54.

VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION — INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses.*

**Audīre**, to hear.

Present: **Audiō**, I hear.

Imperfect: **Audiēbam**, I was hearing.

Future: **Audiam**, I shall hear.

[129.] 1. Hī miserī puerī dormīre nōn possunt. 2. Venī sōlus! cēterōs vidēre nōn cupiō. 3. Vestrās epistulās, amīcī, neque potest legere neque cupiet! 4. Num semper tuam, Balbe, vōcem audiam? Nunquam tacēbis? 5. Multa hodiē sciō, quae herī nesciēbam. 6. Quandō frātrēs vestrī, Balbe et Quinte, domum venient? — Nescīmus. 7. Caesar cōpiās omnēs

ad flūmen statim convenīre jubet. 8. Legiōnēs trēs in armīs sunt, duae ad castra redeunt. 9. Mīlītēs decimae legiōnis mox ad auxilium convenient. 10. Nunquam cum mājōribus hostium cōpiīs pūgnāvērunt nostrī. 11. Caesar mīlītēs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, ex omnibus portibus convenīre jubet. 12. Sciō : omnia ex amīcō audiēbam ; semper mē dē hīs rēbus omnibus certiōrem facit.

[130.] 1. The leader hears the soldiers' shouts. 2. He will not hear your words : he is deaf in that ear. 3. Where will your brothers be to-morrow, friends ? — We don't know. 4. What do you hear from (*ex*, with *abl.*) Balbus about these affairs ? 5. Caesar orders the soldiers to come together at once. 6. Your brothers cannot come to you every day. 7. Our soldiers will send no dart in vain. 8. You will not, will you, sleep the whole day (*acc.*) ? 9. Boys, the master desires to see your books ! 10. The king himself was coming to (*ad*) the city. 11. When will you come ? — I do not know. 12. To-day I know, yesterday I did not know. 13. They wish to sleep, but they are not able. 14. Where are the slaves ? — They will come soon. 15. When will you be silent ? — Do you not wish to hear us ?

## SECTION 55.

## VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses.*Perfect:            Audīvī, *I have heard, I heard.*Pluperfect:        Audīvērām, *I had heard.*Future Perfect: Audīvērō, *I shall have heard.*

1. Audīvistī-ne omnia?        *Have you heard everything?*
2. Nōnne omnia audīvistī?    *Have you not heard everything?*
3. Num omnia audīvistī?       *You have not heard everything,  
have you?*

[131.] 1. Quid! nōnne audīvī omnia quae puerī vestrī dicēbant? 2. Nōn hodiē cupīs, quae herī cupīvistī. 3. Mīlitēs jam castra mūnīverunt; omnēs crās in armīs erunt. 4. Audīverās-ne ea quae dicēbam? — Audīveram. 5. Haec-ne omnia nescīvistī? — Nēmō mē certiōrem fēcīt. 6. Hae puellae tōtum diem dormīverunt. 7. Cupīvistī-ne omnēs hōs, quōs habuistī, librōs legere? 8. Partem ōrātiōnis omnēs audīverunt, partem audīvit nēmō. 9. Mīlitēs, quī herī castra mūniēbant, hodiē omnēs in armīs erunt. 10. Tempus-ne est dormire? fessum sum. — Tempus est, dormī! 11. Venī, statim, Mārce! nōnne mē audīs? 12. Venīte, puerī, cotīdiē ad mē cum omnibus vestrīs librīs!

[132.] 1. Some fortified the camp, others were in arms. 2. Have you heard, citizens, the words of your king? 3. Have you not already fortified the camp, soldiers? 4. You have not been asleep all day, Quintus, have you? 5. Come to-morrow, Marcus! I wish



to see you. 6. Are you tired, boys? It is time to sleep. 7. Be silent, boys! The master will hear your shouts. 8. Did you wish to come? — *No*, I did not wish. 9. They were ignorant of everything. — Did you tell them (dat.) everything? 10. Quintus will have slept for twelve hours. 11. Will he carry all these things to the city? 12. Will you fear the enemy's charge? 13. Will they tell nothing to their brothers and sisters? 14. Will he hear the songs of the birds? 15. Will you inform Caesar of the enemy's approach?

### XXI. *Ulysses in Polyphemus's Cave.* — V.

Tum summā celeritātē ad litus properāvērunt. Nāvem cōnscendunt, et ā litore solvunt. Ulixēs autem māgnā vōce clāmāvit, “*Ō Polyphēme, sī amīcī tuī tē interrogāverint, ‘Quis tē excaecāvit?’ ita tē respondēre jubēbō, ‘Ulixēs mē excaecāvit.’*” Polyphēmus autem, irā infēsus, ingēns saxum in nāvem jēcit, quod Graecōrum nāvem paene oppressit. Ulixēs autem post multōs tandem errōrēs fēlīciter ad patriam vēnit. Adventus ējus Pēnelopae uxōrī et Tēlemachō filiō grātissimus fuit.

### XXII. *Gaius Mucius Scaevola.*

Dum Etrūscī aliquandō Rōmam obsident, Gaius Mūcius, adulēscēns nōbilis, cōnsilium audācissimum init. Nam penetrāre in hostium castra, et ipsum rēgem Porsinam interficere, cōstituit. Ferum igitur intrā vestem abdit, et castra hostium clam intrat.

Ingēns ibi turba prope rēgium tribūnal adstat; nam forte militibus stīpendium datur. Scriba autem cum rēge parī ferē ōrnātū sedēbat: eum militēs vulgō adeunt. Mūcius igitur, quī rēgis faciem ignōrābat neque rogāre militēs audēbat, ferrum arripit, et scribam prō rēge obtruncat. Tum sibi ipse per trepidam turbam viam facit; sed militēs rēgiū juvenem comprehendunt, et ad rēgem retrahunt. Clāmat rēx, “Quis tē ad hōc facinus addūxit?” et militēs statim ignem adferre jubet. Tum Mūcius, “Cīvis Rōmānus sum, neque ignem timeō,” et statim dextram manum in flammam inicit, neque torrentem retrahit. Rēx, tantā audāciā attonitus, militēs juvenem ab flammīs āmovēre jubet. “Tē vērō, tantae virtūtis juvenem, liberum dīmittō.” Tum Mūcius callidē, “Quiā,” inquit, “meam virtūtem honōrāvistī, tibi aperiam quod scīre cupiēbās. Nōs trecentī, prīncipēs juventūtis Rōmānae, in mortem tuam conjūrāvimus. Forte ego eōrum prīmus fui; cēterī, suō quisque tempore, aderunt.” Rēx, hīs verbīs conterritus, pācem cum Rōmānīs facit, et exercitum reducit.

### *Recapitulatory Exercises.*

J. 1. Omnēs-ne tuōs servōs ad urbem mittēs? — Trēs solum mittam, cēterī domī manēbunt. 2. Num ūnus homō hanc tōtam nāvem regere potest? 3. Valē, mī frāter, saepe mihi dē tuīs rēbus nūntium mitte! 4. Ille sapiēns hominēs dīvitias contemnere, sapientiam amāre, jubet. 5. Nostra tēla longissima, vestra, hostēs, brevissima sunt! 6. Nōne pecūniam, quam mercātōrī dēbētis, aliquandō pendētis? 7. Eōs militēs, quī for-

tissimē pūgnāverant, in sinistrō cornū collocābat. 8. Militēs tertiæ legiōnis, quī herī in armīs erant, castra crās mūnient. 9. Portāte, servī, ad conclāve meum omnēs hōs librōs, quī in mēnsā sunt!

K. 1. You will not, will you, lead back all the infantry forces at once to the camp? 2. Where will you station the cavalry? — I shall station them all on the wings. 3. I will send the slave, whom you see, at once to the city. 4. The enemy will never have fought more bravely than to-day. 5. Have you often been in Rome? — I have never been in Rome. 6. Are you older than your brother? — I am the youngest of all my brothers. 7. Do you always carry your books on your head? Are you not tired? 8. Did not the girl's beautiful voice charm all? 9. These ships are far faster than those. 10. Have you heard the *things* which I was saying? — I am deaf, I did not hear your words.

L. 1. Quid, puerī, magistrō dīcētis? — Omnia eī, quae tibi jam dīximus, dīcēmus. 2. Contentīne fuistis ejus ōrātiōne? — Nōn tōtam ōrātiōnem, sed pauca solum verba audīvimus. 3. Amā mātrem, cui nōn vītā solum sed omnia etiam quae habēs et habēbis dēbēs. 4. Equitum pars in dextrō, pars in sinistrō cornū collocātur. 5. Pulchriōrēs quam quōs in hortīs habēs flōrēs nunquam vidēbō. 6. Utrī superābunt? — Hostēs: in animīs nostrōrum nūlla est spēs victōriae. 7. Hī servī, pessimī hominēs, dominum suum, optimum virum, semper culpābant. 8. Nunquam lātiōre aggere quam hīc est castra mūniuntur. 9. Hōc conclāve ducentōs pedēs longum esse dīcitur. 10. Flūctūsne nāvem in lītus agunt? — Nautae nōn jam regere possunt.

M. 1. My brother is always charmed by your witty talk. 2. Do you hear those shouts? — I hear. Have our men put the enemy to flight? 3. What! sailor, did you fear these little clouds? you ought to despise them. 4. The enemy will soon come together. 5. The cavalry were killing all who were in arms. 6. Will you not ask help from me, your best friend? 7. Urge on your horses, soldiers! you will soon have put the enemy to flight. 8. Good-bye, mother! good-bye, brothers! expect frequent letters! 9. The boy lived ten years only. 10. Have you not fought bravely, soldiers? Have you not defeated the enemy? — We have fought very bravely, and yet (*neque*) we have not defeated the enemy.

## SECTION 56.

## VERBS: PASSIVE VOICE.

## FIRST CONJUGATION: INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses.*

**Amārī**, *to be loved.*

Present: Am **or**, *I am loved.*

Imperfect: Am **ābar**, *I was being loved.*

Future: Am **ābor**, *I shall be loved.*

[133.] 1. Frātrēs ā sorōribus, sorōrēs ā frātribus, amārī dēbent. 2. Epistulīs tuīs, frāter, omnēs dēlectāmur! 3. Militēs, quī castra mūniēbant, ā duce laudantur. 4. Praemiō nōn ōrnāris, nam pigerrimus fuistī. 5. Adventus clāssis nūntiātur; paucīs diēbus in portū

erit. 6. Num ab hostibus, quōs saepe jam superāvistis, nunc ipsī superābiminī? 7. Nūntiōs-ne ad Caesarem cotīdiē mittēbant? 8. Castra jam ā cōpiīs hostium pedestribus circumdābantur. 9. Agrī nostrī tōtum diem ab equitibus vastābantur. 10. Amīcus tuus carminibus Horātiī dēlectābitur. 11. Crēbriōrēs epistulās nūntiōsque ad Caesarem dē hīs rēbus mittent. 12. Ego amīcīque meī pulcherrimā puellae vōce dēlectābāmur.

[134.] 1. It is not given to all men to be always well. 2. It is pleasant to be sometimes praised. 3. The Roman fleet is being put to flight by the enemy. 4. I am charmed with your welcome letter. 5. You are blamed by those (*is*) who ought to praise you. 6. The arrival of the whole fleet was being announced. 7. The messengers were coming from Caesar to the fleet. 8. That burden will very easily be carried by the slaves. 9. We all desire to be praised. 10. All these things will soon be announced. 11. Will the messengers come soon? — I do not know. 12. The cavalry were being posted on the left wing. 13. The table will be decorated with flowers by the girls. 14. The whole fleet of the enemy will soon be put to flight. 15. Were you not charmed with the king's speech?



## SECTION 57.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE : INDICATIVE MOOD — (*Continued*).

Perfect: Amāt **us sum**, *I have been loved, I was loved.*

Pluperfect: Amāt **us eram**, *I had been loved.*

Future Perfect: Amāt **us erō**, *I shall have been loved.*

[135.] 1. *Ā cēterīs saepe, ā tē, Quīnte, nunquam laudātus sum!* 2. *Nōne pars equitum in dextrō cornū collocābitur?* 3. *Trīgintā jam diēs agrī nostrī vastātī sunt; frūstrā auxilium exspectātur.* 4. *Māgna pars Ītaliae ā Carthāginiēnsibus vastāta erat.* 5. *Adventus nāvium longārum ā crēbrīs nūntiīs nūntiātus erit.* 6. *Nōne tū, Cornēlia, hōc grātissimō nūntiō dēlectāta es?* 7. *Flōribus, quī in hortō tuō sunt, saepe dēlectātī sumus.* 8. *Clāssis jam omnibus rēbus ōr-nāta est.* 9. *Hōc gravissimum onus ā parvō puerō ad urbem portātum erat.* 10. *Cōpiae hostium ā nostrīs saepe jam fugātae sunt.* 11. *Calcāria mea frātrī tuō ā patre data sunt.* 12. *Ab equitibus nostrīs sex tōtās hōrās fortissimē pūgnātum est.*

Notice that the participle (*amātus, laudātus, etc.*), which along with *sum* goes to form these tenses, has to agree in gender or number with the subject.

[136.] 1. You have been praised by everybody: are you not satisfied? 2. Our lands have been laid waste by the cavalry. 3. Some have been praised, others have been blamed. 4. The arrival of the ambassadors had already been announced. 5. He is said to be

charmed with his son's diligence. 6. Will they not wish to be loved and praised? 7. My sisters have been delighted with the queen's words. 8. I have been praised by some, *and* blamed by others. 9. The horse had been urged on by the spur. 10. The boy will have been urged on by the master. 11. The enemy's ships were being put to flight by Caesar. 12. *She* was praised (perfect) both by her father and by her mother. 13. The camp was being surrounded by a high rampart. 14. He was praised by many, and blamed by few. 15. These girls are frightened by the smallest things.

### XXIII. *A Cork Leg.*

Viātor Britannicus, ā ferā quādam atque incultā gente captus, diū dē salūte suā dēspērābat. Tandem novum quidem et inaudītum cōsilium capit. Cultrum enim prīmō in alterum crūs (corticeum erat) rīdēns infīxit: mīrantur quī circumstābant barbarī, et paululum recēdunt. Deinde tōtum crūs exuit, et minācī vultū manibus suprā caput vibrāvit. Tum vērō illī, māximō commōtī timōre, summā vī in pedēs sē dedērunt.

## SECTION 58.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD.

**Monēri**, *to be advised.*Present: Mon**eor**, *I am advised.*Imperfect: Mon**ēbar**, *I was (being) advised.*Future: Mon**ēbor**, *I shall be advised.*

[137.] 1. Amārī quam timērī multō melius est. 2. Avēsne clāmōribus puerōrum terrēbantur? 3. Māgna pecūnia mihi ab illō homine diū dēbētur. 4. Tōta clāssis in lītore ā nōbīs vidēbātur. 5. Rēx hōc nūntiō contentus esse vidētur (*seems*). 6. Illī puerī diūtius manēre nōn possunt. 7. Omnēs portū nāvibusque dēlectābimur. 8. Nōnne puer aliquandō ā magistrō monēbitur? 9. Māter mea diūtissimē exspectāta erat. 10. Prōra hūjus nāvis multīs flōribus ā nautīs ōrnāta erit.

[138.] 1. The enemy's ships are seen by our sailors. 2. They were frightening the horses with their spurs. 3. The horses were frightened by the enemy's shouts. 4. The books have been carried to your room. 5. The leader is not feared by the soldiers. 6. The enemy's lands had been laid waste by us. 7. In vain were they warned by their father. 8. Your friends were remaining at home a very long time. 9. The sailors were seen in the city. 10. His (*ejus*) conversation seems to me to be very witty. 11. The soldiers seemed to be frightened by the waves. 12. The enemy will not be frightened by Caesar's arrival.

## SECTION 59.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD — (*Continued*).

Perfect:            Monit **us sum**, *I have been advised, I was advised.*

Pluperfect:        Monit **us eram**, *I had been advised.*

Future Perfect: Monit **us erō**, *I shall have been advised.*

[139.] 1. Ego, amīcī, vestrīs clāmōribus nōn sum territus! 2. Puerī ā mē saepe monitī, saepe culpātī sunt. 3. Balbus semper optimus cīvis habēbātur.<sup>1</sup> 4. Imāgō rēgīnae pulcherrima habita est. 5. Equī equitēsque crēbrō fulgure territī sunt. 6. Māior sorōrum ab omnibus pulchrior habēbātur. 7. Ōrātiō Cicerōnis ab omnibus bonīs ūtilissima habita est. 8. Nōne saepe jam ā nōbīs monitī erātis? 9. Sorōrēs, nōne flūctibus territae estis? 10. Ille vir omnium sapientissimus habēri dīcitur. 11. Sapientēs clāmōribus istōrum hominum nōn territī erint. 12. Tempora antīqua ā multīs saepe optima habentur.

[140.] 1. The sailors were being frightened by the arrival of the ships of the enemy. 2. The horses were frightened (perfect) by the lightning. 3. The boys have often been warned by the master. 4. Julia is considered by far the most beautiful of the sisters. 5. These flowers have always been considered very beautiful. 6. Your little brother will have been frightened by the lightning. 7. He has always been

<sup>1</sup> *Habēri*, “to be held,” *i.e.* “considered.”

considered a very good boy. 8. Caesar, you have been praised by all the citizens. 9. Nobody ought to be considered very wise. 10. The greater part of the soldiers will be kept (*habeo*) in camp. 11. Marcus has always been considered, and is, a very good citizen. 12. Some go out from the camp, others are ordered to remain. 13. The sailors have been warned again and again. 14. Will you not be delighted with your son's diligence? 15. You will not, will you, be frightened by the spirited horse?

#### XXIV. *David and Goliath.*

Rēx quīdam cum barbarīs bellum gerēbat. Ex hāc parte cōpiae rēgiae castra posuerant, ex alterā parte barbarī; et inter duōs exercitūs vallis erat. Veniēbat autem cotīdiē ex castrīs barbarōrum vir ingentis māgnitūdinis; ūnumque ex rēgiīs cōpiīs ad singulāre certāmen prōvōcābat, māgnā vōce clāmāns, “*Eligite ex vōbīs virum ūnum; is mēcum pūgnābit. Sī ille vicerit, erimus vōbīs servī; sī ego vicerō, vōs nōbīs servī eritis.*”

Erat autem puer quīdam, cūjus frātrēs mājorēs nātū in rēgiīs castrīs erant. Hunc pater pānem, cāseum, vīnum ad frātrēs in castra portāre jubet. Vēnit igitur ille puer hostemque videt, et verba ējus contumēliōsa audit. “*Quid!*” dīcit militibus quī adstābant, “*nēmō cum hōc homine cōfligere audet?*” “*Nēmō,*” respondent militēs. Frātrēs autem irātī dīxērunt, “*Cūr hūc vēnistī, et istās paucās ovēs in dēsertō reliquistī? Nōta est nōbīs superbia tua. Nōne pūgnam vidēre cupivistī?*”



XXV. *David and Goliath* — (*Continued*).

At ille puer ad rēgem statim properat. “Rēx,” inquit, “cum hōc homine cōnfligere cupiō.” Quid! tū quī puer imberbis es, cum tantō virō cōnfligere audēs? “At ego, puer, ut ais, imberbis, dum ovēs patris pāscō, ipse manū et leōnem et ursum interfēcī, neque ego hūjus hominis verba timeō. Deus enim, quī mē dē leōne liberāvit, mē dē manū hostis liberābit.” Tum rēx, tantā puerī audāciā attonitus, galeam et lōricam et gladium suum dedit. Respondet ille “Hārūm rērum ūsum nōn habeō.” Tulit autem baculum suum, quod semper in manibus habēbat, et quīnque lapidēs dē torrente ēligit, fundamque manū tulit. Ita armātus adversus hostem prōcēdit. Hostis autem, puerum vidēns, rīdet, “Num ego,” inquit, “canis sum? venīs enim ad mē cum baculō et lapidibus. Hodiē pulchrum tuum corpus avibus ferīsque dabō.” Tum puer, “Tū venīs ad mē cum gladiō et hastā et clipeō; ego ad tē, Deō adjūtōre, veniō.” Puer autem ūnum lapidem tulit, et fundā jēcit. Hostem lapis in frontem percutit; prōnus ille ad terram dēcidit. Currit statim puer, et gladium hostis ēdūcit: interficit hominem, et caput ējus praecīdit. Tum rēgiae cōpiae, omnī metū liberātae, adversus hostēs impetum faciunt: ipsōs fundunt fugantque, castra omnium rērum plēna capiunt.

## SECTION 60.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE : INDICATIVE MOOD.

**Rēgī**, *to be ruled.*Present : Reg **or**, *I am ruled.*Imperfect : Reg **ēbar**, *I was (being) ruled.*Future : Reg **ar**, *I shall be ruled.*

[141.] 1. Nōne saepe, serve, ad urbem ā dominō mittēris ? 2. Crās ā patre, puer, ad rēgiōs hortōs mit-tēris ! 3. Quid ! nōne hīs tēlīs, quae ab omnibus partibus jaciuntur, interficiēmur ? 4. Cotīdiē in silvās ā mātrem mittimur. 5. Amō tē, mī frāter, sed ā tē con-temnor ! 6. Hae cōpiaē hodiē ēdūcī nōn dēbent. 7. Vectīgālia omnia tempore pendentur. 8. Crēbrī nūntiī ad Caesarem dē hīs rēbus mittentur. 9. Hōc poēma ab omnibus legētur et laudābitur. 10. Caesar omnēs cōpiās prō castrīs instrūxit. 11. Tōta clāssis prō portū instruēbātur. 12. Illī servī ā dominō saepe monitī sunt, sed tacent nunquam. 13. Librī, quī herī optimī habēbantur, hodiē contemnuntur.

[142.] 1. The soldiers were being drawn up before the camp. 2. The ten ships will be drawn up before the city. 3. I am being sent to the city by my brother. 4. You will be sent to the master to-morrow. 5. You ought to be sent to the camp. 6. The ships were being driven on to the shore by the waves. 7. The messen-gers will be led to the king by the soldiers. 8. You

are being despised by the soldiers. 9. The third legion will be led out of the camp in the morning. 10. Our soldiers will be killed by the cavalry of the enemy. 11. The royal fleet of twenty ships is being drawn up. 12. What are you doing, boys? You had been often warned.

## SECTION 61.

## VERBS: THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD — (*Continued*).

Perfect:                Rēct **us sum**, *I have been ruled, I was ruled.*

Pluperfect:        Rēct **us eram**, *I had been ruled.*

Future Perfect: Rēct **us erō**, *I shall have been ruled.*

[143.] 1. Cōpiae, quae māne ēdūcēbantur, jam reductae sunt. 2. Nāvis ā nautā optimē erat rēcta. 3. Annōs nātus novem ad magistrum ā patre ductus sum. 4. Hī puerī mihi pigerrimī esse videntur. 5. Trīgintā jam nāvēs ā militibus aedificātae sunt. 6. Tōta clāssis, quae ducentārum nāvium erat, prō portū instrūcta est. 7. Brevī tempore omnēs cōpiae prō castrīs instrūctae erunt. 8. Legiōnēs ā Caesare ad flūmen ductae sunt. 9. Lēgātī ad rēgem hostium mox mittentur. 10. Nūntiī māgnīs clāmōribus ad castra ā militibus ductī erant. 11. Hī puerī immemorēs magistrī, neque librōs legēbant neque tacēbant. 12. Jam fessī sumus; trēs hōrās tōtās instrūctī sumus, neque hostēs videntur.

[144.] 1. The soldiers have been led back to the camp. 2. The army had already been drawn up. 3. I was led by the boy's shouts to the river. 4. The merchant will be building a ship for himself. 5. Two legions were led out from the camp. 6. Only a few soldiers will be killed by the darts. 7. The ships will already have been drawn up before the harbour. 8. You will have steered the ship better than the sailor himself. 9. You will not be warned again: you have been often warned already. 10. When will the messengers be sent? They ought to be sent at once. 11. This coast was being inhabited by the sailors. 12. Where are the sailors? The ship ought to be drawn up at once.

#### XXVI. *Nasica and Ennius.*

“Not at Home.”

Nasica aliquandō ad poētam Ennium vēnit. Eum ab ostiō quaerit. Respondet ancilla, “Domī nōn est.” Ita tamen dominī jūssū dīxit, et Ennius intus erat, rēsque Nasicae nōta erat. Paucīs post diēbus vēnit Ennius ad Nasicam. “Nōn est domī,” exclāmat ipse Nasica. Tum Ennius “Quid!” inquit, “ego nōn cōgnōscō vōcem tuam?” Respondet Nasica, “Homō es impudēns: ego ancillae tuae crēdidī, tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī.”

#### XXVII. *Literal Obedience.*

Mārcus Pūpius Pīsō, ōrātor Rōmānus, servōs omnēs aliquandō convōcāvit. “Nimium,” inquit, “loquācēs

semper estis, et saepe mihi, dominō vestrō, molesti estis. Sī quid vōs interrogāverim, respondēbitis; aliōquī vōs tacēre jubeō.” Paucīs post diēbus Pīsō servum, et aliōs amīcōs, et Clōdium quemdam ad convīvium invitāre jubet. Hōra cēnae īstat. Aderant cēterī convīvae omnēs: solum Clōdium exspectant. “Ubi est noster Clōdius? quid agit? Servī, nōne vēnit Clōdius?” “Nōn vēnit,” respondent. Tandem Pīsō servum, quem Clōdium invitāre jūsserat, ad sē vōcat. “Nōne Clōdium invitāvistī?” — “Invitāvī.” — “Cūr ergō nōn vēnit?” — “Quiā negāvit sē venīre posse.” Tum Pīsō, irātus, “Cūr id nōn statim dīxistī?” — “Quiā mē nōn interrogāvistī.”

## SECTION 62.

## VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD.

**Audīrī**, *to be heard.*

Present: **Audior**, *I am heard.*

Imperfect: **Audiēbar**, *I was (being) heard.*

Future: **Audiar**, *I shall be heard.*

[145.] 1. Vōxne rēgīnae ab omnibus cīvibus audīrī potest? 2. Num tua vōx audītur? Nōne tacēre tē jubēbam? 3. Haec castra ā mīlitibus septimae legiōnis mūnientur. 4. Vōcēs vestrae vix ā mātrea audīrī possunt. 5. Nāvēs jam aedificātae, et omnibus rēbus ōrnātae, erant. 6. Magister, ā quō puerī ērudīē-



bantur, trīgintā sex annōs nātus est. 7. Militēs, ā quibus castra mūniēbantur, ad castra mox convenient. 8. Rēgia clāssis, quae quīngentārum nāvium est, prō portū māgnō instrūcta est.

[146.] 1. The lazy boys will be punished by the master. 2. The shouts of the enemy were scarcely being heard in the city. 3. I was being educated by that master. 4. You will be scarcely heard by the soldiers. 5. Soon the birds will be heard in the woods. 6. The ships will soon be drawn up. 7. Four ships had already been drawn up. 8. The camp was being fortified by all the soldiers. 9. You are never silent; you will be punished. 10. The boys were being very well educated.

## SECTION 63.

### VERBS: FOURTH CONJUGATION.

#### PASSIVE VOICE: INDICATIVE MOOD — (*Continued*).

Perfect:           Audit**us sum**, *I have been heard, I was heard.*

Pluperfect:      Audit**us eram**, *I had been heard.*

Future Perfect: Audit**us erō**, *I shall have been heard.*

[147.] 1. Quot nōmina ā tē audīta sunt? — Tria verba vix audīvī. 2. Quotiēns ab illō magistrō pūnītī estis? — Nescīmus. 3. Estne bene dormītum? — Optimē tōtam noctem dormītum est. 4. Quam est jūcundum ab omnibus amārī laudārīque! 5. Quot militēs prō castrīs tēlis hostium interficientur? 6. Puerī, quī

verba magistrī contemnēbant, pūnītī sunt. 7. Quotiēns ā nostrīs vōx ducis acūta audīta est? 8. Rēbus in adversīs quam est jūcundum amīcōrum auxilium! 9. Nōn eadem ā senibus juvenibusque cupientur. 10. Quid! num haec castra aggere jam mūnīta erant? 11. Vōx tua vix audīta est; nam puerī illī nunquam tacent. 12. Illud flūmen, illa silva, istī hortī vestrī, quam saepe nōs dēlectāvērunt!

[148.] 1. Caesar's words were scarcely heard by the soldiers. 2. How many boys have been punished to-day? 3. How often has that bird been heard in the woods? 4. How pleasant it is to be taught by you! 5. How often have you been warned?—Very often. 6. It is better to be warned than to be punished. 7. The camp will have been fortified by all the soldiers. 8. The birds were often heard in the summer; now they cannot be heard. 9. They were killing the birds, they will be punished. 10. How many words did you hear?—We heard the whole speech. 11. How many oaks are there in your gardens?—I do not know. 12. How often will these boys have been punished? 13. Were we not charmed with those gardens of yours? 14. All the soldiers had been led into camp. 15. Those (*is*) who are never punished are not always the best boys.

### XXVIII. *Bacchus and the Pirates.*

Praedōnēs quīdam puerum in lītore stantem vident. Statim propius nāvī accēdunt. Vestēs ejus splendidās comāsque flāvās cōspiciunt. Eum filium rēgis esse crēdidērunt. Dux igitur praedōnum comitibus clāmat,

“Heus! comitēs, ad lītus celeriter nāvem appellite! puerum statim nāvī tollēmus. Nōn sine multā pecūniā, crēdō, patrī rēgiō puerum reddēmus.” Jūssa ducis nautae celeriter faciunt. Puerum validīs compedibus vinciunt. Subitō autem puer leviter subrīsīt: compedēs, velut arte magicā, dēcidunt. Tum ūnus ex nautīs sociīs dixit, “Ēn! deus hīc certō est, vel deī fīlius! ventōs in nāvem incitābit, et nōs nōn nāvem solum, sed vītā etiam āmittēmus. Puerum divīnum statim in lītore expōnite!” Socii autem crēdere nōluerunt. At ille puer subitō verba quaedam murmurat: tum multa et mīra prōdigia videntur! Mālus enim nāvis sē in vītem convertit, prōra corōnīs flōreīs ōrnātur, vīnum tōtā nāvī fluit. Leō ingēns saevusque in prōrā stat, irātusque fremit. Quid! ipsum etiam mare oculīs velut prāta vidētur; ubi spūma fuit, nunc albae rosae sunt; neque flūctuum murmura, sed velut pecorum vōcēs arborēsque, ventō agitātae, audiuntur. Nautae autem, māgnō superātī metū, sē in mare prōiciunt—in delphīnēs statim convertuntur. Tum puer, dum leōnī vīnum ē calice aureō dat, nautae, quī solum restat puerumque deum esse dīxerat, “Rēctē tū quidem dīxistī: Bacchus sum, Semelēs fīlius. Tū autem omnem dēpōne timōrem, comes deī semper eris, vītāque laetam agēs.”

*Recapitulatory Exercises.*

N. 1. Hī servī saepe frūstrā monitī sunt: tempore nunquam domum redeunt. 2. Nihil manibus ūtilius hominibus datum est. 3. Ab hīs sapientia, ab illīs dīvitiae contemnēbantur. 4. Cūr, milītēs, nōn statim in hostēs impetum facitis?—Caesaris adventus ex-

spectātur. 5. Omnēs hī militēs, quī hōc tempore in armīs sunt, in hostēs crās ēdūcentur. 6. Nostrī nautae neque fulgure et nūbibus, neque multitūdine nāvium rēgiārum, terrērī possunt. 7. Quī meī sunt, mihi dā; tuōs librōs tibi habē! — Hōc faciam. 8. Hīc puer sibi sapientissimus esse vidētur: ā cēterīs idem contemnitur. 9. Nāvēs, quae hieme aedificātae erant, aestāte prō portū instruēbantur. 10. Cicerō auxilium petēbat: duae ā Caesare legiōnēs statim ad castra Cicerōnis ductae sunt.

O. 1. The soldiers are ordered by the leader to be in arms at once. 2. These boys will be sent home by the master. 3. Read your book, boy; you will soon be sent home. 4. Are you not sent to the city often? — I am sent not often only, but every day. 5. What! will you not be silent? you will soon be punished by your mother. 6. Does it not seem to you a very difficult thing to be silent long? 7. You, who are a soldier, will not be frightened by these shouts. 8. These boys will have been more often punished than praised. 9. Those men have been very well taught by adversity. 10. I have always been loved by you: of all my friends you are by far the dearest to me.

P. 1. Caesar jam dē hīs rēbus omnibus certior factus est; ipse ego eī omnia dīcēbam. 2. Aliī sibi, aliī, suī immemorēs, amīcīs solum timent. 3. Nullā rē quam librīs conclāvia melius ōrnantur — Sciō, meum plēnum est et Graecōrum et Latīnōrum librōrum quōs semper legō — Optimē facis. 4. Quandō nāvēs aedificātae erunt? — Jam sunt aedificātae — Summam vestram dīligentiam laudō. Ōrnātaene etiam sunt nāvēs? — Brevī tempore omnibus rēbus ōrnātae erunt.



5. Audīvistisne ōrātiōnem illius clārissimī ōrātōris ? — Ego, Quīnte, aderam ; sed, ut scīs, surdus sum, pauca solum verba audīvī — Tū, Mārce, num tū etiam surdus es ? Quid dīxit ille vir ? — Optimē ego quidem omnia audīvī ; nōn facētissima solum sed ūtilissima etiam ōrātiō fuit ; omnēs, quī aderant, dēlectāvit.

6. Militēs ! nōne vōbīs victōria quam vīta multō cārīor est ? Omnis spēs cīvītātis in vōbīs est. Memorēs patrum mātremque et parvōrum filiōrum, memorēs etiam virtūtis vestrae, tēla jacite, incitāte equōs, ācerimum in hōs hominēs impetum facite ! Quotiēns ā vōbīs ipsīs et ā mājōribus vestrīs ingēns hostium multitūdō superāta et fugāta est ? Et nunc etiam brevī tempore superātae erunt hae rēgiae cōpiae. Tum ā cīvibus praemia, laudēs, omnia quae hominēs cupiunt, exspectāre jubeō.

Q. 1. That ship has always been considered the fastest of the whole fleet. 2. The soldiers of the fifth and eighth legions will soon be drawn up. 3. Your father was delighted with your diligence : all the masters were praising you. 4. The soldiers of the enemy, who now surround our camp, will soon be killed by our darts. 5. Industrious boys are blamed by nobody ; but all will blame the lazy. 6. Fifteen ships had been built and fitted up by the soldiers. 7. The greater part of this great city was at that (*is*) time inhabited by German merchants. 8. The darts were being thrown in vain : the camp had been very well fortified. 9. The infantry forces were remaining in the camp ; the cavalry fought very bravely before the camp. 10. Hold your tongues, boys ! — We hear ; we will be silent in a short time.



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## SECTION 64.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

Learn the Subjunctive Mood of *sum*, as found on pages 144 and 145, remembering that the meanings vary with the use, and are not fixed as in the Indicative Mood.

The uses of the Subjunctive Mood are both dependent and independent; but as its name (*subjoined*) indicates, it is used mainly in dependent sentences. In this dependent use the *tense* is determined by the tense of the verb of the principal sentence.

Consider carefully the following sentences:—

**Audiō ubi sit,** *I hear where he is.*

**Audiō ubi fuerit,** *I hear where he has been.*

**Audiam ubi sit,** *I shall hear where he is.*

**Audiam ubi fuerit,** *I shall hear where he has been or was.*

**Audīvī ubi sit,** *I have heard where he is.*

**Audīvī ubi fuerit,** *I have heard where he has been or was.*

**Audīverō ubi sit,** *I shall have heard where he is.*

**Audīverō ubi fuerit,** *I shall have heard where he has been or was.*

**Audiēbam ubi esset,** *I heard where he was.*

**Audiēbam ubi fuisset,** *I heard where he had been.*

**Audīvī ubi esset,** *I heard where he was.*

**Audīvī ubi fuisset,** *I heard where he had been.*

**Audīveram ubi esset,** *I had heard where he was.*

**Audīveram ubi fuisset,** *I had heard where he had been.*

Observe that the principal verbs in the first four groups are followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, while those of the last three are followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

The tenses of the first four groups are:—1. present; 2. future; 3. perfect definite (perfect translated *have* or *has*); 4. future perfect.

These are termed *primary* or *principal* tenses. They are followed by primary tenses (present and perfect) of the subjunctive mood.

The tenses of the last three groups are:—1. imperfect; 2. perfect indefinite (perfect when translated without *have* or *has*); 3. pluperfect.

These are termed *secondary* or *historical* tenses, and are followed by the historical tenses (imperfect and pluperfect) of the subjunctive mood.

**RULE: Primary tenses in the subjunctive mood follow primary tenses in the indicative mood, and secondary follow secondary.**

Notice also that the dependent sentences whose verbs are subjunctive are really questions with interrogative words, but are not put as questions. These are termed Indirect Questions.

Direct Question: **Ubi est?** *Where is he?*

Indirect Question: **Audiō ubi sit,** *I hear where he is.*

Direct Question: **Quis est?** *Who is it?*

Indirect Question: **Audiō quis sit,** *I hear who it is.*

**RULE: Indirect questions have their verbs in the subjunctive mood.**

*Interrogative words:—*

quis, *who?*      cūr, *why?*      num, *whether?*

ubi, *where?*      quot, *how many?*

[149.] Sciō quid sit. Audīvī quot milītēs fuerint. Audīvī quot equitēs essent. Scit ubi fuerint. Nesciō

cūr homō claudus sit. Imperātor audīverat cūr homō claudus esset. Germānus audīvit ubi servī fuissent. Pater audiet ubi filiī fuerint. Quīdam homō interrogāvit quae nāvēs longissimae essent. Quae cīvitatēs in armīs sunt? Quaeram quae cīvitatēs in armīs sint. Caesar quaesīvit quot mīlitēs in exercitū essent.

[150.] Have you heard how many ships were on the sea? He knows where you are. I will hear where the enemy are, and will soon overcome them. They asked why we had been so sad. Will you tell me why you are so different from your father? (91, sentence 4.) Where will you be to-morrow? My friends will ask where you will be to-morrow. Have your friends often been in Athens? I asked whether his friends had often been in Rome. The general assembled his soldiers, and asked how many had been at home and how many in the camp. I had already heard where he was; where he had been.

## SECTION 65.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — (*Continued*).

#### FINAL CLAUSES.

Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of *amō* (pages 147 and 151), and form the subjunctive of the following verbs: —

optō, <i>desire</i> ;	portō, <i>carry</i> ;	cōservō, <i>preserve</i> ;
impetrō, <i>obtain</i> ;	labōrō, <i>strive</i> ;	postulō, <i>demand</i> .

Consider : —

**Hominēs arma capiunt ut sē cōnservent.**

*Men take up arms that they may save themselves.*

*or in order that they may save themselves.*

*or to save themselves.*

*or for the purpose of saving themselves.*

Notice that *ut sē cōnservent* expresses the purpose of *arma capiunt*, and may be rendered in the various ways given.

**RULE : *Ut* with the subjunctive mood may express purpose.**

[151.] Caesar postulāvit ut militēs arma portārent. Militēs semper labōrāvērunt ut signa cōservārent. Imperātor optat ut nāvēs haec onera portent. Incitat mē ut in opere dīligentissimus sim. Tē herī laudāvī ut tē ad mājōrem dīligentiam incitārem. Sē armābunt ut pūgnent. Militēs adventum hostium exspectābant ut cum dīligentiā pūgnārent. Puer ut ā parentibus amētur dīligentissimē labōrat.

[152.] Caesar was placing the seventh legion on the left wing in order that the soldiers might fight most bravely. The teacher gives books to his boys that they may obtain wisdom. Embassadors had come from the town to obtain peace. I beseech you to love your brothers and sisters, in order that you may be loved by them. He exhorts them to put the enemy to flight. I exhort you to read these orations studiously. They advised him to build five war-ships, that he might overcome the enemy.

## SECTION 66.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD — (*Continued*).

## FINAL CLAUSES (NEGATIVE).

Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of *moneō* (pages 154 and 158), and form the subjunctive of the following verbs : —

<i>habeō, have ;</i>	<i>dēbeō, owe ;</i>	<i>pāreō, obey ;</i>
<i>placeō, please ;</i>	<i>taceō, be silent.</i>	

Examine carefully : —

**Monuit mē nē arma contrā patriam caperem.**

*He advised me not to take up arms against my country.*

**RULE: Negative purpose may be expressed by *nē* with the subjunctive mood.**

**NOTE.**—The conjunction *nē* means “in order that not,” “not to,” “that not,” “lest.”

[153.] *Rōmānī castra circumdābant nē hostēs effugium habērent. Māgnus exercitus missus est nē agrī nostrī vastārentur. Epistulam ad tē scribam nē culper. Equī postulantur nē militēs gravissima onera portent. Rēx pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit nē oppidum oppūgnārent.*

[154.] The general will fight so that his country may be saved. We warned the king not to demand much money. I shall station the cavalry on the left wing, so that the enemy may not hold the hill. They demanded that we should not obey the king. I shall take care that the industrious boys are not blamed.



## SECTION 67.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD— (*Continued*).

## CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.

Learn the subjunctive of *regō*, active and passive voices (pages 162 and 166), and form the subjunctive of the following verbs:—

*dicō*, say; *dūcō*, lead; *vehō*, carry; *vīvō*, live.

Examine carefully:—

1. **Accidit ut Rōmae essem.** *It happened that I was in Rome.*
2. **Equitēs tam ācritēr pūgnāvērunt ut hostēs superārent.** *The cavalry fought so bravely that they conquered the enemy.*
3. **Marius adeō inops fuit ut nōn cibum habēret.** *Marius was so poor that he did not have food.*

These sentences show a use of *ut* different from that found in purpose sentences, for here it is used with the subjunctive mood to express result.

**RULE:** *Ut* in affirmative and *ut nōn* in negative clauses may be used with the subjunctive mood to express result.

NOTES.—*a.* These clauses of result often follow such expressions as: *accidit*, “it happens”; *reliquum est*, “it remains”; *necesse est*, “it is necessary.”

*b.* After verbs or expressions of hindering, when made negative, *quīn* takes the place of *ut*, particularly after the phrase *nōn dubitō*, “I do not doubt.”

[155.] *Tanta fuit ējus dīligentia ut domum brevī tempore aedificāret. Accidit ut fortēs militēs illō tempore in castrīs essent. Nōn dubitō quīn sint fortēs.*

Tantus hostium timor fuit ut nōn Rōmānōs exspectārent. Nōn dubitō quīn adfuerint. Nēmō dubitābat quīn nāvēs aedificāret. Necesse est ut cōsulī Mārcellō pāreāmus. Accidit ut Mārcellus cum exercitū Athēnīs sit. Accidit ut nōn domī essem. Nōn dubitō quīn nostrī militēs equitēs hostium superāverint. Caesaris exercitus tam ācritēr dīmicāvit, ut nēmō supereset.

[156.] The enemy were so cowardly that Caesar's troops easily defeated them. Nothing prevents you from going to Athens. I do not doubt that the enemy will fight bravely. I am so poor that I have no money. Caesar led his forces before the camp so quietly that the enemy did not perceive them. The number of the enemy is so great that we may not conquer. The army is so brave that our enemies will not conquer. It happens that I have no book.

## SECTION 68.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (*Continued*).

#### INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.

The preceding exercises on the subjunctive mood illustrated its use in dependent sentences.

The following show its use in independent sentences.

Learn the subjunctive, active and passive, of *audiō* (pages 169 and 173), and form the subjunctive of the following verbs: —

mūniō, *fortify*; sciō, *know*; finiō, *finish*; lēniō, *soothe*.

Examine these sentences: —

1. **Dent tibi dī multa bona**, *May the gods give you many good things.*

2. **Utinam falsus vātēs sim!** *O may I be a false prophet!*
3. **Utinam Scipiō vīveret!** *Would that Scipio were alive!*
4. **Utinam pater meus vēnisset!** *O that my father had come!*

In these sentences notice:—1. The subjunctive mood expresses a wish. 2. When the wish is possible, *i.e.* can be realized, the present tense is found (sentences 1 and 2). 3. When the wish is represented as not realized at the present time, the imperfect tense is found. 4. When the wish is represented as not realized in past time, the pluperfect tense is found.

**RULE:** The subjunctive mood is used independently to express a wish, the present tense denotes the wish possible, the imperfect denotes the wish as not now realized, the pluperfect, as not realized in past time.

**NOTE.**—*Utinam* often precedes the subjunctive of wish.

[157.] **Cīvēs valeant.** *Utinam cīvēs meī beātī essent!* *Illud utinam nē scriberem!* *Nē vivam sī tibi concēdō!* *Utinam minus vītæ cupidī fuissēmus!* *Ōrātor videat in primīs quibus dē rēbus loquātur.* *Utinam Caesar omnēs cōpiās prō castrīs instruat!* *Utinam magister discipulōs dīligentissimōs laudāvisset!*

[158.] May the slaves be warned by their owner. O that my brother had lived and were now putting the enemy to flight! May the city preserve its liberty. O that you had heard the words of your teacher! O that you were well and happy! May the shouts of the enemy frighten neither the generals nor the soldiers. Would that my father were alive! May I live in the city where I have many friends.

## SECTION 69.

## SUBJUNCTIVE (HORTATORY) AND IMPERATIVE.

Another use of the subjunctive in independent sentences is that expressing commands or exhortations.

Consider the following: —

**Audiam**, *let me hear.*

**Audiāmus**, *let us hear.*

**Audī**, *hear* (**audiās**, with indef. subject).

**Audīte**, *hear ye.*

**Audiat**, *let him hear.*

**Audiant**, *let them hear.*

From these sentences observe that commands and exhortations are expressed by the subjunctive and imperative moods.

In the first person where there is no imperative form and in the third person, there being no imperative form save in the future tense, *the subjunctive supplies the place of the imperative.*

The negative of the hortatory subjunctive is *nē*, not *nōn*.

[159.] *Nē difficilia optēmus. Plūrimum in amīcitiā amīcōrum bonōrum valeat auctōritās. Quidquid agēs prūdentē agās. Magister discipulōs moneat. Amēmus patriam et hostēs ejus vincāmus. Videant cōsulēs nē quid<sup>1</sup> rēs pūblica dētrīmentī capiat. Nē Caesar lēgātōs ad castra hostium mittant. Quam ob rem discēde atque hunc timōrem ēripe. Līberā rem pūblicam metū, in exsilium discēde. Cōservēmus, jūdicēs, hominem quem amīcōrum dīgnitāte comprobārī vidēmus.*

[160.] *Let the boys carry the heavy burdens. Orators, do not praise yourselves nor your orations. Let us go to Caesar and inform him of (de) these matters. Boys, love your parents. Let the pupils*

<sup>1</sup> The indefinite *quis* and not *aliquis* is used after *sī*, *nē*, *num*.

listen to the words of their teacher. Let them make a bridge in order that the elephants may cross the river.

## SECTION 70.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

#### MISCELLANEOUS SENTENCES.

[161.] Nēmō dubitat quīn haec rēs brevī tempore ā tē cōficiātur. Fierī potest ut rēctē homō sentiat et id quod sentit politē ēloquī nōn possit. Restat ut doceam omnia quae sint in mundō hominum causā facta esse. Audīte, quaesō, jūdicēs. Hostēs tam fortiter pūgnāvērunt ut prīmīs cadentibus proximī ex eōrum corporibūs tēla mitterent. Moveor hīs rēbus omnibus sed in eam partem ut salvī omnēs sint.

Dēfendāmus nōmen salūtemque populī Rōmānī. Quantum facinus in sē admiserit vidētis. Dēsinant īnsidiārī domī suae cōsulī. Hōc dīcō nē genus bellī nēve hostem īgnōrētis.

Praeclārum illud est, et rēctum quoque, et vērū ut eōs quī nōbīs cārissimī esse dēbeant aequē ac nōsmet ipsōs amēmus.

Pergāmus igitur ad reliqua, et institūtum ōrdinem persequāmur.

Haec stultitia facit ut hōc stultissimum facinus sapienter factum esse videātur.

Mūnitiōnēs efficiēbant nē quem<sup>1</sup> locum nostrī intrāre possent.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note, page 141.



## CONJUGATION OF THE VERBS.

### THE VERB *Sum*, *I am*.

This verb *sum* is irregular and defective. Its stems are *es* and *fu*. It has neither gerund nor supine, and no participle but the future.

Principal Parts: **sum** (pres. ind.), **esse** (pres. inf.), **fuī** (perf. ind.), **futūrus** (fut. part.).

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

##### *Singular.*

1. **sum**, *I am*.
2. **es**, *thou art (you are)*.
3. **est**, *he (she, it) is*.

##### *Plural.*

1. **sumus**, *we are*.
2. **estis**, *you are*.
3. **sunt**, *they are*.

#### IMPERFECT.

##### *Singular.*

1. **eram**, *I was*.
2. **erās**, *thou wast (you were)*.
3. **erat**, *he (she, it) was*.

##### *Plural.*

1. **erāmus**, *we were*.
2. **erātis**, *you were*.
3. **erant**, *they were*.

#### FUTURE.

##### *Singular.*

1. **erō**, *I shall be*.
2. **eris**, *you will be*.<sup>1</sup>
3. **erit**, *he will be*.

##### *Plural.*

1. **erimus**, *we shall be*.
2. **eritis**, *you will be*.
3. **erunt**, *they will be*.

<sup>1</sup> Hereafter the 2d person singular will be translated by *you*, referring to one person, replacing the more exact *thou*, since *you* is the pronoun commonly used for the 2d person singular in English.

## PERFECT.

Singular.

Plural.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. fuī, <i>I have been, was.</i>       | 1. fuimus, <i>we have been, were.</i>                     |
| 2. fuistī, <i>you have been, were.</i> | 2. fuistis, <i>you have been, were.</i>                   |
| 3. fuit, <i>he has been, was.</i>      | 3. fuērunt or<br>fuēre } <i>they have been,<br/>were.</i> |

## PLUPERFECT.

Singular.

Plural.

- |                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. fueram, <i>I had been.</i>   | 1. fuerāmus, <i>we had been.</i>  |
| 2. fuerās, <i>you had been.</i> | 2. fuerātis, <i>you had been.</i> |
| 3. fuerat, <i>he had been.</i>  | 3. fuerant, <i>they had been.</i> |

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Singular.

Plural.

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. fuerō, <i>I shall have been.</i>   | 1. fuerimus, <i>we shall have been.</i> |
| 2. fueris, <i>you will have been.</i> | 2. fueritis, <i>you will have been.</i> |
| 3. fuerit, <i>he will have been.</i>  | 3. fuerint, <i>they will have been.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

Plural.

- |                     |           |
|---------------------|-----------|
| 1. sim <sup>1</sup> | 1. sīmus. |
| 2. sīs              | 2. sītis. |
| 3. sit              | 3. sint.  |

## IMPERFECT.

Singular.

Plural.

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. essem (forem) | 1. essēmus.         |
| 2. essēs (forēs) | 2. essētis.         |
| 3. esset (foret) | 3. essent (forent). |

<sup>1</sup> It is impossible to give any one translation of the subjunctive mood that will be satisfactory and not misleading. It is sometimes translated by the English auxiliaries, *may, might, should, would*; by the English infinitive or imperative; also by English indicative.

PERFECT.

*Singular.*

1. fu **erim**
2. fu **eris**
3. fu **erit**

*Plural.*

1. fu **erimus.**
2. fu **eritis.**
3. fu **erint.**

PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

1. fu **issem**
2. fu **issēs**
3. fu **isset**

*Plural.*

1. fu **issēmus.**
2. fu **issētis.**
3. fu **issent.**

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

2. **es**, *be thou.*

*Plural.*

2. **este**, *be ye.*

FUTURE.

*Singular.*

2. **estō**, *thou shalt be.*
3. **estō**, *he shall be.*

*Plural.*

2. **estōte**, *ye shall be.*
3. **suntō**, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. **esse**, *to be.*

PERFECT. **fuisse**, *to have been.*

FUTURE. **futūrus esse**, *also fore, to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE. **futūrus, -a, -um**, *about to be.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB **amō** (STEM **amā**), *love*.

Principal Parts: **amō** (pres. ind.), **amāre** (pres. inf.), **amāvī** (perf. ind.), **amātum** (supine).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

**amō**, *I love, am loving, do love.*

**amāmus**, *we love, are loving, do love.*

**amās**, *you love, are loving, do love.*

**amātis**, *you love, are loving, do love.*

**amat**, *he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love.*

**amant**, *they love, are loving, do love.*

## IMPERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

**amābam**, *I loved, was loving, did love.*

**amābāmus**, *we loved, were loving, did love.*

**amābās**, *you loved, were loving, did love.*

**amābātis**, *you loved, were loving, did love.*

**amābat**, *he loved, was loving, did love.*

**amābant**, *they loved, were loving, did love.*

## FUTURE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

**amābō**, *I shall love.*

**amābimus**, *we shall love.*

**amābis**, *you will love.*

**amābitis**, *you will love.*

**amābit**, *he will love.*

**amābunt**, *they will love.*

PERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

amāvī, *I have loved, or I loved.*

amāvimus, *we have loved, or we loved.*

amāvistī, *you have loved, or you loved.*

amāvistis, *you have loved, or you loved.*

amāvit, *he has loved, or he loved.*

amāverunt (-ēre), *they have loved, or they loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

amāveram, *I had loved.*

amāverāmus, *we had loved.*

amāverās, *you had loved.*

amāverātis, *you had loved.*

amāverat, *he had loved.*

amāverant, *they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

amāverō, *I shall have loved.*

amāverimus, *we shall have loved.*

amāveris, *you will have loved.*

amāveritis, *you will have loved.*

amāverit, *he will have loved.*

amāverint, *they will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

am em <sup>1</sup>

am ēmus.

am ēs

am ētis.

am et

am ent.

IMPERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

am ārem

am ārēmus.

am ārēs

am ārētis.

am āret

am ārent.

<sup>1</sup> See note, page 144.



## PERFECT.

*Singular.*amāv **erim**amāv **eris**amāv **erit***Plural.*amāv **erimus.**amāv **eritis.**amāv **erint.**

## PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*amāv **issem**amāv **issēs**amāv **isset***Plural.*amāv **issēmus.**amāv **issētis.**amāv **issent.**

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*2. am **ā**, *love thou.**Plural.*2. am **āte**, *love ye.*

## FUTURE.

*Singular.*2. am **ātō**, *thou shalt love.*3. am **ātō**, *he shall love.**Plural.*2. am **ātōte**, *you shall love.*3. am **antō**, *they shall love.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. am **āre**, *to love.*PERFECT. amāv **isse**, *to have loved.*FUTURE. amāt **ūrus esse**, *to be about to love.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. am **āns, -antis**, *loving.*FUTURE. amāt **ūrus, -a, -um**, *about to love.*

**GERUND.**

- Gen.* amandī, *of loving.*  
*Dat.* amandō, *for loving.*  
*Acc.* amandum, *loving.*  
*Abl.* amandō, *by loving.*

**SUPINE.**

- Acc.* amātum, *to love.*  
*Abl.* amātū, *to love, to be loved.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts: **amor** (pres. ind.), **amāri** (pres. inf.),  
**amātus sum** (perf. ind.).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*

am **or**, *I am loved.*  
 am **āris** (-re), *you are loved.*  
 am **ātur**, *he is loved.*

*Plural.*

am **āmur**, *we are loved.*  
 am **āminī**, *you are loved.*  
 am **antur**, *they are loved.*

## IMPERFECT.

*Singular.*

am **ābar**, *I was loved.*  
 am **ābāris** (-re), *you were loved.*  
 am **ābātur**, *he was loved.*

*Plural.*

am **ābāmur**, *we were loved.*  
 am **ābāminī**, *you were loved.*  
 am **ābantur**, *they were loved.*

## FUTURE.

*Singular.*

am **ābor**, *I shall be loved.*  
 am **āberis** (-re), *you will be  
 loved.*  
 am **ābitur**, *he will be loved.*

*Plural.*

am **ābimur**, *we shall be loved.*  
 am **ābiminī**, *you will be  
 loved.*  
 am **ābuntur**, *they will be loved.*

## PERFECT.

*Singular.*

amāt**us sum**, *I have been or  
 was loved.*  
 amāt**us es**, *you have been or  
 were loved.*  
 amāt**us est**, *he has been or  
 was loved.*

*Plural.*

amāt**ī sumus**, *we have been  
 or were loved.*  
 amāt**ī estis**, *you have been or  
 were loved.*  
 amāt**ī sunt**, *they have been  
 or were loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

amātus eram, *I had been loved.*

amātī erāmus, *we had been loved.*

amātus erās, *you had been loved.*

amātī erātis, *you had been loved.*

amātus erat, *he had been loved.*

amātī erant, *they had been loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

amātus erō, *I shall have been loved.*

amātī erimus, *we shall have been loved.*

amātus eris, *you will have been loved.*

amātī eritis, *you will have been loved.*

amātus erit, *he will have been loved.*

amātī erunt, *they will have been loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

am er

am ēmur.

am ēris (-re)

am ēminī.

am ētur

am entur.

IMPERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

am ārer

am ārēmur.

am ārēris (-re)

am ārēminī.

am ārētur

am ārentur.

PERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

amātus sim

amātī sīmus.

amātus sis

amātī sītis.

amātus sit

amātī sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*amāt **us** **essem**amāt **us** **essēs**amāt **us** **esset***Plural.*amāt **ī** **essēmus.**amāt **ī** **essētis.**amāt **ī** **essent.**

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*2. am āre, *be thou loved.**Plural.*2. am āminī, *be ye loved.*

## FUTURE.

*Singular.*2. am ātor, *thou shalt be loved.*3. am ātor, *he shall be loved.**Plural.*

2. ———

3. am antor, *they shall be loved.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. am āri, *to be loved.*PERFECT. amāt **us** **esse**, *to have been loved.*FUTURE. amāt **um** **īri**, *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. amāt **us**, **-a**, **-um**, *having been loved.*GERUNDIVE. am andus, **-a**, **-um**, *to be loved.*

(FUTURE.)



SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB **moneō** (STEM **monē**), *advise*.

Principal Parts : **moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitum**.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Singular.*

mon **eō**, *I advise, am advising,  
do advise.*  
mon **ēs**, *you advise, are advis-  
ing, do advise.*  
mon **et**, *he advises, is advising,  
does advise.*

*Plural.*

mon **ēm**us, *we advise, are ad-  
vising, do advise.*  
mon **ēt**is, *you advise, are ad-  
vising, do advise.*  
mon **ent**, *they advise, are ad-  
vising, do advise.*

IMPERFECT.

*Singular.*

mon **ēbam**, *I advised, was ad-  
vising, did advise.*  
mon **ēbās**, *you advised, were  
advising, did advise.*  
mon **ēbat**, *he advised, was ad-  
vising, did advise.*

*Plural.*

mon **ēbā**mus, *we advised, were  
advising, did advise.*  
mon **ēbāt**is, *you advised, were  
advising, did advise.*  
mon **ēbant**, *they advised, were  
advising, did advise.*

FUTURE.

*Singular.*

mon **ēbō**, *I shall advise.*  
mon **ēbis**, *you will advise.*  
mon **ēbit**, *he will advise.*

*Plural.*

mon **ēbi**mus, *we shall advise.*  
mon **ēbit**is, *you will advise.*  
mon **ēbunt**, *they will advise.*

## PERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

monuī, *I have advised, or I  
advised.*

monuistī, *you have advised,  
or you advised.*

monuit, *he has advised, or he  
advised.*

monuimus, *we have advised,  
or we advised.*

monuistis, *you have advised,  
or you advised.*

monuerunt (-ēre), *they have  
advised, or they advised.*

## PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

monueram, *I had advised.*

monuerās, *you had advised.*

monuerat, *he had advised.*

monuerāmus, *he had advised.*

monuerātis, *you had advised.*

monuerant, *they had advised.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

monuerō, *I shall have ad-  
vised.*

monueris, *you will have ad-  
vised.*

monuerit, *he will have ad-  
vised.*

monuerimus, *we shall have  
advised.*

monueritis, *you will have ad-  
vised.*

monuerint, *they will have ad-  
vised.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

mon eam

mon eās

mon eat

mon eāmus.

mon eātis.

mon eant.

## IMPERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

mon ērem

mon ērēs

mon ēret

mon ērēmus.

mon ērētis.

mon ērent.

PERFECT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
monu <b>erim</b>	monu <b>erimus.</b>
monu <b>eris</b>	monu <b>eritis.</b>
monu <b>erit</b>	monu <b>erint.</b>

PLUPERFECT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
monu <b>issem</b>	monu <b>issēmus.</b>
monu <b>issēs</b>	monu <b>issētis.</b>
monu <b>isset</b>	monu <b>issent.</b>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
2. mon <b>ē</b> , <i>advise thou.</i>	2. mon <b>ēte</b> , <i>advise ye.</i>

FUTURE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
2. mon <b>ētō</b> , <i>thou shalt advise.</i>	2. mon <b>ētōte</b> , <i>you shall advise.</i>
3. mon <b>ētō</b> , <i>he shall advise.</i>	3. mon <b>entō</b> , <i>they shall advise.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.	mon <b>ēre</b> , <i>to advise.</i>
PERFECT.	monu <b>isse</b> , <i>to have advised.</i>
FUTURE.	monit <b>ūrus esse</b> , <i>to be about to advise.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	mon <b>ēns, -entis</b> , <i>advising.</i>
FUTURE.	monit <b>ūrus, -a, -um</b> , <i>about to advise.</i>

**GERUND.**

- Gen.* mon**endī**, *of advising.*  
*Dat.* mon**endō**, *for advising.*  
*Acc.* mon**endum**, *advising.*  
*Abl.* mon**endō**, *by advising.*

**SUPINE.**

- Acc.* monit**um**, *to advise.*  
*Abl.* monit**ū**, *to advise, to be advised.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

### PASSIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts : **moneor, monēī, monitus sum.**

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

##### *Singular.*

mon **eor**, *I am advised.*  
 mon **ēris** (-re), *you are advised.*  
 mon **ētur**, *he is advised.*

##### *Plural.*

mon **ēmur**, *we are advised.*  
 mon **ēminī**, *you are advised.*  
 mon **entur**, *they are advised.*

#### IMPERFECT.

##### *Singular.*

mon **ēbar**, *I was advised.*  
 mon **ēbāris** (-re), *you were advised.*  
 mon **ēbātur**, *he was advised.*

##### *Plural.*

mon **ēbāmur**, *we were advised.*  
 mon **ēbāminī**, *you were advised.*  
 mon **ēbantur**, *they were advised.*

#### FUTURE.

##### *Singular.*

mon **ēbor**, *I shall be advised.*  
 mon **ēberis** (-re), *you will be advised.*  
 mon **ēbitur**, *he will be advised.*

##### *Plural.*

mon **ēbimur**, *we shall be advised.*  
 mon **ēbiminī**, *you will be advised.*  
 mon **ēbuntur**, *they will be advised.*



## PERFECT.

*Singular.*

monit**us sum**, *I have been or  
was advised.*

monit**us es**, *you have been or  
were advised.*

monit**us est**, *he has been or  
was advised.*

*Plural.*

monit**ī sumus**, *we have been  
or were advised.*

monit**ī estis**, *you have been  
or were advised.*

monit**ī sunt**, *they have been  
or were advised.*

## PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

monit**us eram**, *I had been  
advised.*

monit**us erās**, *you had been  
advised.*

monit**us erat**, *he had been  
advised.*

*Plural.*

monit**ī erāmus**, *we had been  
advised.*

monit**ī erātis**, *you had been  
advised.*

monit**ī erant**, *they had been  
advised.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Singular.*

monit**us erō**, *I shall have  
been advised.*

monit**us eris**, *you will have  
been advised.*

monit**us erit**, *he will have  
been advised.*

*Plural.*

monit**ī erimus**, *we shall have  
been advised.*

monit**ī eritis**, *you will have  
been advised.*

monit**ī erunt**, *they will have  
been advised.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*

mon **ear**

mon **eāris (-re)**

mon **eātur**

*Plural.*

mon **eāmur.**

mon **eāminī.**

mon **eantur.**

IMPERFECT.

*Singular.*

mon **ēr**er  
mon **ērē**ris (-re)  
mon **ērē**tur

*Plural.*

mon **ērē**mur.  
mon **ērē**minī.  
mon **ērē**ntur.

PERFECT.

*Singular.*

monit **us** **sim**  
monit **us** **sīs**  
monit **us** **sit**

*Plural.*

monit **ī** **sī**mus.  
monit **ī** **sīt**is.  
monit **ī** **sint**.

PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

monit **us** **essem**  
monit **us** **essēs**  
monit **us** **esset**

*Plural.*

monit **ī** **essē**mus.  
monit **ī** **essēt**is.  
monit **ī** **essent**.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Singular.*

2. mon **ē**re, *be thou advised.*

*Plural.*

2. mon **ē**minī, *be ye advised.*

FUTURE.

*Singular.*

2. mon **ē**tor, *thou shalt be advised.*  
3. mon **ē**tor, *he shall be advised.*

*Plural.*

2. ———  
3. mon **ent**or, *they shall be advised.*

## INFINITIVE.

- PRESENT. mon **ēri**, *to be advised.*  
PERFECT. monit **us esse**, *to have been advised.*  
FUTURE. monit **um iri**, *to be about to be advised.*

## PARTICIPLES.

- PERFECT. monit **us, -a, -um**, *having been advised.*  
GERUNDIVE. mon **endus, -a, -um**, *to be advised.*  
(FUTURE.)

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB **regō** (STEM **rege**), *rule*.

Principal Parts: **regō**, **regere**, **rēxī**, **rēctum**.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT.

##### *Singular.*

**regō**, *I rule, am ruling, do rule.*  
**regis**, *you rule, are ruling, do rule.*  
**regit**, *he rules, is ruling, does rule.*

##### *Plural.*

**regimus**, *we rule, are ruling, do rule.*  
**regitis**, *you rule, are ruling, do rule.*  
**regunt**, *they rule, are ruling, do rule.*

##### IMPERFECT.

##### *Singular.*

**regēbam**, *I ruled, was ruling, did rule.*  
**regēbās**, *you ruled, were ruling, did rule.*  
**regēbat**, *he ruled, was ruling, did rule.*

##### *Plural.*

**regēbāmus**, *we ruled, were ruling, did rule.*  
**regēbātis**, *you ruled, were ruling, did rule.*  
**regēbant**, *they ruled, were ruling, did rule.*

##### FUTURE.

##### *Singular.*

**regam**, *I shall rule.*  
**regēs**, *you will rule.*  
**reget**, *he will rule.*

##### *Plural.*

**regēmus**, *we shall rule.*  
**regētis**, *you will rule.*  
**regent**, *they will rule.*

## PERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

*rēxī, I have ruled or I ruled.*

*rēximus, we have ruled or we ruled.*

*rēxistī, you have ruled or you ruled.*

*rēxistis, you have ruled or you ruled.*

*rēxit, he has ruled or he ruled.*

*rēxērunt (-ēre), they have ruled or they ruled.*

## PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

*rēxeram, I had ruled.*

*rēxerāmus, we had ruled.*

*rēxerās, you had ruled.*

*rēxerātis, you had ruled.*

*rēxerat, he had ruled.*

*rēxerant, they had ruled.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

*rēxerō, I shall have ruled.*

*rēxerimus, we shall have ruled.*

*rēxeris, you will have ruled.*

*rēxeritis, you will have ruled.*

*rēxerit, he will have ruled.*

*rēxerint, they will have ruled.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

*regam*

*regāmus.*

*regās*

*regātis.*

*regat*

*regant.*

## IMPERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

*regarem*

*regērēmus.*

*regērēs*

*regērētis.*

*regeret*

*regerent.*



PERFECT.

*Singular.*

rēx erim

rēx eris

rēx erit

*Plural.*

rēx erimus.

rēx eritis.

rēx erint.

PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

rēx issem

rēx issēs

rēx isset

*Plural.*

rēx issēmus.

rēx issētis.

rēx issent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Singular.*

2. reg e, rule thou.

*Plural.*

2. regite, rule ye.

FUTURE.

*Singular.*

2. regitō, thou shalt rule.

3. regitō, he shall rule.

*Plural.*

2. regitōte, ye shall rule.

3. reguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. reg ere, to rule.

PERFECT. rēx isse, to have ruled.

FUTURE. rēct ūrus esse, to be about to rule.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. reg ēns, -entis, ruling.

FUTURE. rēct ūrus, -a, -um, about to rule.

**GERUND.**

- Gen.* regendi, *of ruling.*  
*Dat.* regendō, *for ruling.*  
*Acc.* regendum, *ruling.*  
*Abl.* regendō, *by ruling.*

**SUPINE.**

- Acc.* rēctum, *to rule.*  
*Abl.* rēctū, *to rule, to be ruled.*

# THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts: **regor, regī, rēctus sum.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### PRESENT.

#### *Singular.*

**reg or**, *I am ruled.*  
**reg eris (-re)**, *you are ruled.*  
**reg itur**, *he is ruled.*

#### *Plural.*

**reg imur**, *we are ruled.*  
**reg iminī**, *you are ruled.*  
**reg untur**, *they are ruled.*

### IMPERFECT.

#### *Singular.*

**reg ēbar**, *I was ruled.*  
**reg ēbāris (-re)**, *you were ruled.*  
**reg ēbātur**, *he was ruled.*

#### *Plural.*

**reg ēbāmur**, *we are ruled.*  
**reg ēbāminī**, *you were ruled.*  
**reg ēbantur**, *they were ruled.*

### FUTURE.

#### *Singular.*

**regar**, *I shall be ruled.*  
**reg ēris (-re)**, *you will be ruled.*  
**reg ētur**, *he will be ruled.*

#### *Plural.*

**reg ēmur**, *we shall be ruled.*  
**reg ēminī**, *you will be ruled.*  
**reg entur**, *they will be ruled.*

### PERFECT.

#### *Singular.*

**rēctus sum**, *I have been ruled.*  
**rēctus es**, *you have been ruled.*  
**rēctus est**, *he has been ruled.*

#### *Plural.*

**rēctī sumus**, *we have been ruled.*  
**rēctī estis**, *you have been ruled.*  
**rēctī sunt**, *they have been ruled.*

## PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

rēctus eram, *I had been ruled.*

rēctī erāmus, *we had been ruled.*

rēctus erās, *you had been ruled.*

rēctī erātis, *you had been ruled.*

rēctus erat, *he had been ruled.*

rēctī erant, *they had been ruled.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

rēctus erō, *I shall have been ruled.*

rēctī erimus, *we shall have been ruled.*

rēctus eris, *you will have been ruled.*

rēctī eritis, *you will have been ruled.*

rēctus erit, *he will have been ruled.*

rēctī erunt, *they will have been ruled.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

regar

regāmur.

regāris (-re)

regāminī.

regātur

regantur.

## IMPERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

regerer

regerēmur.

regerēris (-re)

regerēminī.

regerētur

regerentur.

## PERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.*

rēctus sim

rēctī sīmus.

rēctus sīs

rēctī sītis.

rēctus sit

rēctī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

rēctus essem

rēctus essēs

rēctus esset

*Plural.*

rēctī essēmus.

rectī essētis.

rēctī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Singular.*

2. regere, *be thou ruled.*

*Plural.*

2. regiminī, *be ye ruled.*

FUTURE.

*Singular.*

2. regitor, *thou shalt be ruled.*

3. regitor, *he shall be ruled.*

*Plural.*

2. ———

3. reguntor, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

regī, *to be ruled.*

PERFECT.

rēctus esse, *to have been ruled.*

FUTURE.

rēctum irī, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT.

rēctus, -a, -um, *having been ruled.*

GERUNDIVE.

regendus, *to be ruled.*

(FUTURE.)



## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

VERB **audiō** (STEM **audī**), *hear*.Principal parts : **audiō**, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītum**.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.**Plural.***audiō**, *I hear, am hearing, do hear.***audīmus**, *we hear, are hearing, do hear.***audīs**, *you hear, are hearing, do hear.***audītis**, *you hear, are hearing, do hear.***audit**, *he hears, is hearing, do hear.***audiunt**, *they hear, are hearing, do hear.*

## IMPERFECT.

*Singular.**Plural.***audiēbam**, *I heard, was hearing, did hear.***audiēbāmus**, *we heard, were hearing, did hear.***audiēbās**, *you heard, were hearing, did hear.***audiēbātis**, *you heard, were hearing, did hear.***audiēbat**, *he heard, was hearing, did hear.***audiēbant**, *they heard, were hearing, did hear.*

## FUTURE.

*Singular.**Plural.***audiam**, *I shall hear.***audiēmus**, *we shall hear.***audiēs**, *you will hear.***audiētis**, *you will hear.***audiet**, *he will hear.***audient**, *they will hear.*

PERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

audivī, I have heard or I  
heard.

audivistī, you have heard or  
you heard.

audivit, he has heard or he  
heard.

audivimus, we have heard  
or we heard.

audivistis, you have heard or  
you heard.

audivērunt (-ēre), they have  
heard or they heard.

PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

audivēram, I had heard.

audivērās, you had heard.

audivērat, he had heard.

audivērāmus, we had heard.

audivērātis, you had heard.

audivērant, they had heard.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

audivērō, I shall have heard.

audivēris, you will have  
heard.

audivērit, he will have heard.

audivērimus, we shall have  
heard.

audivēritis, you will have  
heard.

audivērint, they will have  
heard.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

audiam

audiās

audiat

audiāmus.

audiātis.

audiant.

IMPERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

audīrem

audīrēs

audīret

audīrēmus.

audīrētis.

audīrent.

## PERFECT.

*Singular.*

audiv **erim**  
 audiv **eris**  
 audiv **erit**

*Plural.*

audiv **erimus.**  
 audiv **eritis.**  
 audiv **erint.**

## PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

audiv **issem**  
 audiv **issēs**  
 audiv **isset**

*Plural.*

audiv **issēmus.**  
 audiv **issētis.**  
 audiv **issent.**

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*2. aud**ī**, *hear thou.**Plural.*2. aud**īte**, *hear ye.*

## FUTURE.

*Singular.*

2. aud**itō**, *thou shalt hear.*  
 3. aud**itō**, *he shall hear.*

*Plural.*

2. aud**itōte**, *ye shall hear.*  
 3. aud**iuntō**, *they shall hear.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. aud**īre**, *to hear.*PERFECT. audiv **isse**, *to have heard.*FUTURE. audit **ūrus esse**, *to be about to hear.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. aud **iēns, -entis**, *hearing.*FUTURE. audit **ūrus, -a, -um**, *about to hear.*

**GERUND.**

- Gen.* audi**endī**, *of hearing.*  
*Dat.* audi**endō**, *for hearing.*  
*Acc.* audi**endum**, *hearing.*  
*Abl.* audi**endō**, *by hearing.*

**SUPINE.**

- Acc.* audi**tum**, *to hear.*  
*Abl.* audi**tū**, *to hear, to be heard.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Principal parts : **audior, audīrī, audītus sum.**

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*

aud **ior**, *I am heard.*  
 aud **īris** (-re), *you are heard.*  
 aud **ītur**, *he is heard.*

*Plural.*

aud **īmur**, *we are heard.*  
 aud **īminī**, *you are heard.*  
 aud **iuntur**, *they are heard.*

## IMPERFECT.

*Singular.*

aud **iēbar**, *I was heard.*  
 aud **iēbāris** (-re), *you were*  
     *heard.*  
 aud **iēbatur**, *he was heard.*

*Plural.*

aud **iēbāmur**, *we were heard.*  
 aud **iēbāminī**, *you were*  
     *heard.*  
 aud **iēbantur**, *they were*  
     *heard.*

## FUTURE.

*Singular.*

aud **iar**, *I shall be heard.*  
 aud **iēris** (-re), *you will be*  
     *heard.*  
 aud **iētur**, *he will be heard.*

*Plural.*

aud **iēmur**, *we shall be heard.*  
 aud **iēminī**, *you will be heard.*  
 aud **iēntur**, *they will be heard.*



PERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

auditus **sum**, *I have been heard.*

auditī **sumus**, *we have been heard.*

auditus **es**, *you have been heard.*

auditī **estis**, *you have been heard.*

auditus **est**, *he has been heard.*

auditī **sunt**, *they have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

auditus **eram**, *I had been heard.*

auditī **erāmus**, *we had been heard.*

auditus **erās**, *you had been heard.*

auditī **erātis**, *you had been heard.*

auditus **erat**, *he had been heard.*

auditī **erant**, *they had been heard.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

auditus **erō**, *I shall have been heard.*

auditī **erimus**, *we shall have been heard.*

auditus **eris**, *you will have been heard.*

auditī **eritis**, *you will have been heard.*

auditus **erit**, *he will have been heard.*

auditī **erunt**, *they will have been heard.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

aud **iar**

aud **iāmur**.

aud **iāris (-re)**

aud **iāmini**.

aud **iātur**

aud **iantur**.

## IMPERFECT.

*Singular.*aud **īrer**aud **īrēris** (-re)aud **īrētur***Plural.*aud **īrēmur.**aud **īrēminī.**aud **īrentur.**

## PERFECT.

*Singular.*audīt **us sim**audīt **us sīs**audīt **us sit***Plural.*audītī **sīmus.**audītī **sītis.**audītī **sint.**

## PLUPERFECT.

*Singular.*audīt **us essem**audīt **us essēs**audīt **us esset***Plural.*audītī **essēmus.**audītī **essētis.**audītī **essent.**

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT.

*Singular.*2. aud **īre**, *be thou heard.**Plural.*2. aud **īminī**, *be ye heard.*

## FUTURE.

*Singular.*2. aud **ītor**, *thou shalt be heard.**Plural.*

2. ———

3. aud **ītor**, *he shall be heard.* 3. audiunt**or**, *they shall be heard.*

## INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. aud **īrī**, *to be heard.*PERFECT. audīt **us esse**, *to have been heard.*FUTURE. audīt **um īrī**, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERFECT. audit **us**, -a, -**um**, *having been heard.*

GERUNDIVE. audi**endus**, -a, -**um**, *to be heard.*

(FUTURE.)



# VOCABULARIES TO THE FIRST FOUR PIECES OF TRANSLATION.

## I.—A LETTER, p. 19.

[The words are given in the order in which they come in English.]

fuit, *was*.  
 jūcundus, *pleasant*.  
 mihi, *to me*.  
 nam, *for*.  
 scrībit, *he writes*.  
 filius, *son*.  
 industrius, *industrious*.  
 māter, *mother*.  
 mittit, *sends*.  
 tibi, *to you*.  
 praeimium, *as a reward*.

sōror, *sister*.  
 sex, *six*.  
 annus, *year*.  
 rōgat, *she asks*.  
 mē, *me*.  
 quandō, *when*.  
 pater, *father*.  
 frāter, *brother*.  
 revertet, *will return*.  
 valē, *farewell, good-bye*.

## II.—ROMULUS AND REMUS, p. 20.

[The words are given in the order in which they come in English.]

dum, *while*.  
 aedificat, *is building*.  
 mūr, *wall*.  
 Rōma, *Rome*.  
 imprōbus, *wicked*.  
 trānsilit, *jumps over*.  
 adhūc, *as yet*.  
 parvus, *small*.  
 compellat, *addresses*.  
 contumēliōsus, *insolent*.  
 verbum, *word*.  
 cārissim, *dearest*.

quam, *how*.  
 māgnificus, *magnificent*.  
 arcent, *they keep off*.  
 inimicus, *enemy*.  
 ēgregiē, *splendidly*.  
 autem, *but*.  
 īra, *anger*.  
 occīdit, *kills*.  
 tum, *then*.  
 cōnficit, *he finishes*.  
 fēliciter, *happily*.



## III.—THE BLACK SLAVE, p. 20.

[The words are given as they come in the Latin.]

Agrippa (a name).

niger, *black*.servum, *slave*.habēbat, *had*.platēa, *street*.rident, *laugh at*.ēn ! *see !*clāmant, *they shout*.quam ! *how !*nēmō, *nobody*.tē, *you*.lavat, *wash*.tāmen, *however*.valīdus, *strong*.audit, *hears*.capillus, *hair*.arrīpit, *he seizes*.frūstrā, *in vain*.lacrīma, *a tear*.fundunt, *they shed*.cūctus, *all*.sine, *without*.morā (abl.), (without) *delay*.in, *into*.ātrāmentum, *ink*.dēmergit, *dips*.

## IV.—A FABLE, p. 25.

[The words are given in alphabetical order.]

animal, *animal*.arrōgat, *claims (unjustly)*.capiunt, *they take*.capra, *a goat*.comportant, *they bring it together*.dēnīque, *lastly*.dīvidunt, *they divide*.equus, *a horse*.erit, *he will be*.famēs, *hunger*.imbēcillus, *weak*.inquit, (he) *says*.jungunt, *form*.labor, *labour*.leō, *a lion*.locus, *place*.māior, *greater*.ovis, *a sheep*.partem (acc. sing. of pars), *part*.partēs (acc. plur. of pars), *parts*.praeda, *booty*.prīmus, *first*.propter, *on account of*.quam, *than*.quartus, *fourth*.quattuor, *four*.quoniam, *since*.secundus, *second*.sibi, *for himself*.sī quis, *if anybody, whoever*.sociētās, *a company*.tertius, *third*.ūnus, *one*.vindīcō, *I claim (justly)*.vōbīs, *to you*.

# LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

TO THE

## EXERCISES AND TRANSLATION.

*Obs. 1. Words that occur in the Exercises are printed in **thicker** type. (Many of these occur also in the Translation.)*

*Obs. 2. A figure after a word denotes the declension or conjugation to which it belongs.*

### A

**ā**, **ab**, *by* or *from* (with *abl.*) ;  
it is not used for *by* before  
things ; see p. 23.  
**abdit**, (*he*) *hides*.  
**abest**, *is absent* ; **absunt**, *are*  
*absent* ; from **absum**.  
**āc** (*atque*), *and*.  
**accēdō** (3), *I approach*.  
**accidif**, *it happens*, or *it happened*.  
**accurrunt**, (*they*) *run up*.  
**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre** (gen. **ācris**, *abl.*  
**ācrī**), *fierce, keen, spirited*.  
**ācerimus**, *a, um, the bitterest*.  
**aciēs** (5), *battle, line of battle*.  
**ācrī**, *abl. sing. of ācer (above)*.  
**ācris** (see **ācer**).  
**ācrīter** (*adverb*), *keenly, fiercely*.  
**acuō** (*perf. acui*), *I sharpen*.  
**acūtus**, *a, um, adj., sharp*.  
**ad** (*with acc.*), *to, towards, for,*  
*against*. It translates *to* only  
when "motion to" is meant,  
*e.g. to the city, ad urbem*.  
But in the case of names of  
towns the accusative without

### A

*ad* is used, *e.g. to Rome, Rō-*  
*man*.  
**addūcuntur**, (*they*) *are led*.  
**addūxit** (*perf. of addūcō*), (*he*)  
*led up, tempted*.  
**adest**, *is here, is upon us*.  
**adeunt**, (*they*) *are coming, ap-*  
*proach*.  
**adfectus**, *a, um, moved, touched*.  
**adferre**, *to bring*.  
**adflātū** (*abl. sing. of adflātus*)  
(4), *breath*.  
**ad īmum** (*collem*), *to the bottom*  
*(of the hill)*.  
**adjūtor**, *helper* ; **Deō adjūtore**,  
*God being my helper*.  
**admittō** (3), **mīsi**, **mīssum**, *ad-*  
*mit*, (*in sē*) *commit*.  
**admōvent**, (*they*) *move up*.  
**adnuit**, (*he*) *nods to, beckons*.  
**adstat**, (*he*) *stands by*.  
**adstō** (1), *I stand by*.  
**adsum**, *I am present* ; with *dat.*,  
*I help*.  
**adulēscēns**, **entis**, *a youth*.

## A

advēniunt, (*they*) are coming up, come up.  
**adventus** (4), arrival.  
 adversō colle, up-hill.  
**adversus**, a, um, adj., *adverse*; **rēs adversae**, adversity, trouble.  
 adversus (preposition with acc.), against.  
**aedificat**, (*he*) builds; **aedificant**, (*they*) build.  
**aedificō** (1), [aedis, faciō], build.  
 aedificāvit, (*he*) built.  
 aedificium (2), a building.  
 Aegyptius, a, um, adj., *Egyptian*.  
 aequē ac, as well as.  
 aes, aeris, n., copper, money.  
 aes aliēnum, debt (literally, other people's money).  
**aestās** (gen. aestātis), summer.  
**ager** (gen. agrī), field, land.  
**agger** (gen. aggēris), rampart, mound.  
**āgit**, (*he*) is doing, (*he*) does; **vītam agō**, I spend (*my*) life.  
 agitātus, a, um, tossed.  
 āgmen (gen. āgmīnis), army (on the march).  
 ais, you say.  
**albus**, a, um, adj., white.  
**Alexander** (gen. Alexandrī), Alexander.  
 aliī, others.  
 aliōquī, otherwise.  
**aliquandō**, some day, once upon a time.  
 aliquot, some few.  
**alius**, a, um, other (p. 89); **alii** — aliī, some — others.  
 alligat, (*he*) ties, binds.  
 alligātus, a, um, bound.  
**alter** (see p. 90), the other (of two), another, a second.

## A

altērum (neut. nom. sing. of alter).  
**altus**, a, um, adj., high, deep.  
 alvus (2), belly.  
**amāns** (acc. sing. amantem), loving.  
**amat**, (*he*) loves; **amant**, (*they*) love; **amātur**, (*he*) is loved; **amantur**, (*they*) are loved.  
 amīcitia, ae, friendship.  
**amīcus** (2), friend.  
 āmittō (3), I lose.  
 āmittunt, (*they*) lose.  
 amor (gen. amōris), love.  
 āmōveō (2), I move away.  
 an, or.  
 ancilla (1), maid, servant-girl.  
**animal** (gen. animālis, neut.), animal.  
**anīmus** (2), mind, heart.  
**annus** (2), year.  
 ante (adverb), before; (or preposition with acc.), before; ante Christum nātum, before the birth of Christ (our B.C. in dates).  
 anteā (adverb), before.  
 antiquī, the ancients.  
**antīquus**, a, um, adj., ancient, old.  
 aperiō (4), (uī, tum), I impart, disclose.  
 apērit, (*he*) imparts.  
 appāret, (*he*) appears.  
 appellō (3), I put in (a ship to shore).  
 apud (prep. with acc.), by, near; apud plēbem, before the people.  
 aqua (1), water.  
 arbor (gen. arbōris), (fem. gender), a tree.  
 arbustum (2), a shrub.

A

arcus (gen. arcūs), *bow*.  
 ārea (1), *court, courtyard*.  
 argentum (2), *silver*.  
 ariēs (gen. ariētis), *a ram*.  
 arma (plur.), *arms (of a soldier)*.  
 armō (1), *arm, equip*.  
 armātus, a, um, *armed*.  
 arripit, (he) *snatches up, seizes*.  
 arripiunt, (they) *snatch up*.  
 ars (gen. artis), *art*.  
 assiduus, a, um, adj., *assiduous, continual*.  
 at, *but*.  
 Athēnis, *at Athens*.  
 Atticus, a, um, adj., *belonging to Attica, of Attica*.  
 attingere, *to reach*.  
 attōnitus, a, um, *astonished*.  
 auctoritās, ātis, f., *authority*.  
 audācia (1), *daring*.  
 audāx (gen. audācis, p. 48), *daring*.  
 audeō, *I dare*.  
 audit (4), (he) *hears*.  
 audiunt, (they) *hear*.  
 aureus, a, um, adj., *golden*.  
 auris (gen. auris), *ear*.  
 aurum (2), *gold*.  
 aut, *or*; aut — aut, *either — or*.  
 autem, *however*.  
 auxilium (2), *help*.  
 Aventinus, a, um, *Mōns Aventinus, The Aventine Hill (one of the seven hills of Rome)*.  
 avis (gen. avis), *bird*.

B

baculum (2), *a staff*.  
 Bagradas (acc. Bagradam), a river in Northern Africa.

B

ballista (1), *engine (of war, a huge bow for throwing stones in sieges)*.  
 barba (1), *beard*.  
 barbarus (2), *a barbarian*.  
 beātus, a, um, adj., *blessed, happy*.  
 benignē, *kindly (adv. of benignus)*.  
 bibō (3), *I drink*; perf. bibi, imperative bibe.  
 bonus, *good*; mēlior, *better*; optimus, *best*.  
 brēvis, breve (abl. brevī), *short*.

C

cadō (3), cecidi, cāsum, *fall down*.  
 caelum (2), *sky*.  
 caeruleus, a, um, adj., *blue*.  
 Caesar, aris, *a Roman general and statesman*.  
 calcar (gen. calcāris, neut.), *spur*.  
 Calēdonia, now Scotland.  
 cālix (gen. calicis, masc.), *a cup*.  
 callidē, *cleverly*.  
 callidus, a, um, adj., *clever*.  
 cālō (gen. cālōnis), *a camp-follower*.  
 camēlus (2), *a camel*.  
 campus (2), *a plain*.  
 candēns (gen. candentis), *burning*.  
 canis, is, *a dog*.  
 cānit, (he) *sings*; canunt, (they) *sing*.  
 Cantium, *Kent*.  
 capāx (gen. capācis), *capacious*.  
 capēre, *to take*.  
 capere terram, *to arrive at the land*.  
 capillus (2), *hair*.



## C

căpiō, *I take, form, adopt*; insulam capiunt, *they make (i.e. arrive at) the island.*  
 captīvus (2), *a captive, prisoner.*  
 captus, a, um, *having been taken, captured.*  
 căput (gen. capitis, neut.), *head, capital.*  
 carcer (gen. carcēris), m., *prison.*  
 carmen (gen. carminis, neut.), *song.*  
 carō (gen. carnis), *flesh.*  
 carpunt, *(they) harass.*  
 cārus, a, um, adj., *dear.*  
 cāsūs (2), *cheese.*  
 castellum (2), *a fort, castle.*  
 castra (2, plur.), *a camp.*  
 catapulta (1), *a catapult (on a large scale: used by the Romans in sieges).*  
 catēna (1), *a fetter.*  
 cauda (1), *tail.*  
 causa, ae, f., *cause, reason.*  
 causā (after a genitive), *for the sake of.*  
 celer, celeris, celere (p. 51), *quick.*  
 celeritās, celeritātis, *speed.*  
 celeriter, *quickly.*  
 cēna (1), *dinner.*  
 cēnō (1), *I dine.*  
 centum, num. adj. (indeclinable), *hundred.*  
 certāmen, *a struggle, combat.*  
 certō (adverb), *certainly, assuredly.*  
 certus, a, um, adj., *certain, sure*; certiōrem (ēs) facit, *(he) informs.*  
 cēteri, *the rest.*  
 cibus (2), *food.*  
 Cicerō (gen. Cicerōnis), *a Roman orator and statesman.*

## C

cingunt, *(they) surround.*  
 circā (with acc.), *around.*  
 circiter, *about.*  
 circumdat, *(he) surrounds*; circumdant, *(they) surround*; circumdatur, *is surrounded.*  
 circumstat, *stands around.*  
 cīvis (gen. cīvis), *citizen.*  
 cīvītās (gen. cīvītātis), *state.*  
 clādēs (gen. clādis), *defeat.*  
 clam, *secretly.*  
 clāmāns (gen. clāmantis), *shouting out, calling out.*  
 clāmantēs, nom. or acc. plur. of clāmāns.  
 clāmō (1), *I shout.*  
 clāmor (gen. clāmōris), *shout, shouting.*  
 clārus, a, um, adj., *clear, celebrated.*  
 clāssis (gen. clāssis), *fleet.*  
 claudō (3), *I shut.*  
 claudus, a, um, adj., *lame.*  
 clipeus (2), *shield.*  
 cōgnōscō, *I recognise, know.*  
 collis (gen. collis, masc.), *hill.*  
 collōcat, *(he) places, stations, posts.*  
 collocātus, a, um, *placed.*  
 collōcō (1), *I post.*  
 color (gen. colōris), *colour.*  
 comae (plur.), *hair.*  
 cōmes (gen. comitis), *companion.*  
 committitur, *is begun.*  
 commōtus, a, um, *moved.*  
 compārat, *(he) prepares, gets together.*  
 compēs (gen. compēdis), *fetter, shackle (for the feet).*  
 comprehendunt *(they) seize.*  
 comprobō (1), *approve, assent to.*



C

**concedō** (3), *cēssī, cēssum, yield, withdraw.*  
**conclāve** (gen. *conclāvis*, neut.), *a room.*  
**confectus**, a, um, *worn.*  
**confestim** (adverb), *hurriedly.*  
**conficiō** (3), *fēcī, fectum, finish.*  
**conficiunt**, (they) *finish.*  
**conflīgō** (3), *I fight.*  
**confodiunt**, (they) *stab.*  
**coniciunt**, (they) *throw (with force).*  
**conjūrant**, (they) *conspire.*  
**conjūrō** (1), *I conspire.*  
**cōnscendō** (3), *I climb; with nāvem, I embark.*  
**cōnservō** (1), *preserve.*  
**cōnsilium** (2), *meeting, plan.*  
**cōnspicit**, (he) *sees, observes.*  
**cōnspiciunt**, (they) *see, observe.*  
**cōnstituī** (perf. of *cōstituō*).  
**cōnstituō** (3), *I determine.*  
**cōnsul** (gen. *cōnsūlis*), *consul (a Roman magistrate).*  
**contemnō** (3), *I despise.*  
**contendit**, *he went off.*  
**contentus**, a, um, adj., *content, satisfied.*  
**conterrītus**, a, um, *very frightened.*  
**continentēs**, *continuous.*  
**contrā** (adverb), *on the other hand.*  
**contumēliōsus**, a, um, adj., *insulting.*  
**conturbātis nostrīs**, *our men having been thrown into confusion.*  
**convēnīre**, *to assemble.*  
**convīva** (1), *guest.*  
**convīvium** (2), *an entertainment.*

C

**convōcō** (1), *I call together.*  
**convertit**, (he) *turns.*  
**convertuntur**, *are turned.*  
**cōpia** (1), *a supply.*  
**cōpiaē**, *forces.*  
**coriūm** (2), *skin.*  
**cornū** (abl. *cornū*), *horn, wing (of an army).*  
**corōna** (1), *chaplet, wreath, crown.*  
**corpus** (gen. *corpōris*), *body.*  
**corrīpit**, (he) *seizes.*  
**corticeus**, a, um, adj., *cork, made of cork.*  
**cotidiē**, *every day.*  
**crās** (adverb), *to-morrow.*  
**crātēs** (gen. *crātis*), *a hurdle.*  
**crēber**, *crēbra, crēbrum, adj., frequent.*  
**crēdō** (perf. *crēdidī*, with dative), *I believe, I fancy.*  
**Crēta** (1), *Crete.*  
**crīnis** (gen. *crīnis*), *hair.*  
**cruciātur**, *he is tortured.*  
**crūdēlis**, e, adj., *cruel; crūdēlis in, cruel to.*  
**crūdēlītās**, *crūdēlītātis, cruelty.*  
**crūs** (gen. *crūris*, neut.), *leg.*  
**culpō** (1), *blame.*  
**culpat**, (he) *blames; culpant, (they) blame.*  
**culter** (gen. *cultrī*), *knife.*  
**cum** (with abl.), *along with.*  
**cupidus**, a, um, adj., *desirous.*  
**cupiō** (perf. *cupīvī*), *I wish, desire.*  
**cūra** (1), *care; cūrae esse, to be (for) a care.*  
**currit**, (he) *runs.*  
**cursus** (gen. *cursūs*), *course.*  
**Cyclōps** (gen. *Cyclōpis*), *one of the Cyclopes, the name of some giants.*

## D

**dat**, (he) gives; **dant**, (they) give; **datur**, is given; **dantur**, are given.  
**datur**, is being given.  
**dō**, prep. with abl. (with certiorum facit, of), from, about.  
**dēbeō** (2), I ought, owe.  
**December**, bris, bre, December (adj. agreeing with mēsis).  
**dēcīdit**, (he) falls down; **dēcīdunt**, (they) fall down, fall off.  
**dēdī**, perfect of dare, I gave.  
**dēdītus**, a, um, given up, devoted (from dēdō).  
**dēfēdō** (3), dī, fēsum, protect, defend.  
**dēfīlīxit**, (he) turned aside.  
**deinde**, then, next.  
**dēicīt**, (he) throws down, casts.  
**dēlectat**, (he) delights, pleases, charms; **dēlectant**, (they) delight; **dēlectātur**, is delighted; **dēlectantur**, are delighted.  
**dēlibērō** (1), I deliberate, consider.  
**dēlīgīt**, (he) chooses out.  
**dēlphīnēs** (acc. plur.), dolphins.  
**dēmum**, at length.  
**dēnīque**, lastly.  
**dēns** (gen. dentis), tooth.  
**dēnsus**, a, um, adj., thick.  
**dēpōnō** (3), I lay aside, put away.  
**dēsērit**, (he) deserts.  
**dēsertum** (2), a desert.  
**dēsīnō** (3), sīi (sīvī), sītum, cease.  
**dēspērō** (1), I despair.  
**dētrīmentum**, ī, loss, damage.  
**Deus** (2), God.  
**dēvolvītur**, it is rolled down, it rolls down.

## D

**dēvōrō** (1), I devour.  
**dexter**, dextra, dextrum, adj., right; **dextrā**, on the right hand.  
**dīcēre**, to say, to plead.  
**dīcō** (3), I say, I tell.  
**diē**, abl. sing. of diēs.  
**diēbus**, abl. plur. of diēs.  
**diēs** (5, masc.), day.  
**difficilis**, e, adj., difficult (superl. difficillimus).  
**dīgnitās**, ātis, f., dignity.  
**digītus** (2), finger.  
**dilāpsus**, a, um, disappearing, gliding away.  
**diligēns**, entis, industrious.  
**diligētia** (1), diligence, industry.  
**diligētissimus**, a, um, superlative of diligēns.  
**diligētissimē**, adv., most industriously.  
**dīmīcō** (1), fight.  
**dīmītto** (3), I dismiss.  
**discēdō** (3), cēssī, cēssum, depart.  
**discipulus**, ī, pupil.  
**dissīmīlis**, e, adj., unlike (superl. dissimillimus).  
**diū** (adverb), for a long time; **dīntius**, for a longer time; **dīūtissimē**, for a very long time.  
**dīversus**, a, um, adj., different.  
**dīves** (gen. dīvītis), rich.  
**divīnus**, a, um, adj., divine, godlike.  
**dīvitiāe**, riches.  
**dixit** (from dīcō), he said.  
**dō** (1), I give; perf. dēdī; da (imperative), give!  
**dolor** (gen. doloris), grief, pain.  
**domāre**, to tame, subdue.

D

dominātiō (gen. dominātiōnis),  
rule, tyranny.  
domum, (to) home.  
domus (see p. 57, fem.), house.  
dormiō (4), I sleep.  
dubitō (1), hesitate, doubt.  
dūcit, (he) leads; dūcunt, (they)  
lead.  
dūcō (3), I lead.  
dulcis, e, adj., sweet, pleas-  
ant.  
dum, while.  
duo (see p. 70), two.  
duodēvigintī, eighteen.  
dux (gen. dūcis), leader, gen-  
eral.

E

ē, ex (with abl.), from, out of.  
ē proximō, from quite near.  
ēdūcit, (he) leads out, draws  
out; ēdūcunt, (they) lead  
out; ēdūcitur, is led out.  
efficit, (he) makes (efficiō, ere,  
fēcī, fectum).  
effigiem (acc. of effigiēs), figure,  
ghost.  
effugium, iī, way of escape.  
effodit, (he) digs up, digs out.  
ego (p. 80), I.  
ēgrēgius, a, um, adj., remarka-  
ble, extraordinary.  
ēlīdit, (he) crushes.  
ēlīgō (3), I choose out.  
ēloquor, ēloquī, ēlocūtus (depo-  
nent verb), speak out.  
ēmit, (he) bought.  
ēmittō (3), I send out.  
ēn, see! behold!  
enim, for.  
eōrum (gen. plur. of is), of them,  
their.

E

eōs (acc. plur. of is), them.  
epistūla (1), letter.  
epūlae, a banquet.  
ēques (gen. equitis), a horse-  
man; equitēs, cavalry.  
equus (2), horse.  
erat, was.  
ergō, therefore, then.  
ērīpiō (3), I snatch out, escape  
(uī, reptum).  
errat, (he) wanders.  
error (gen. errōris), wandering  
ērudīō, I teach.  
et, and; et — et, both — and.  
etiam, also.  
Etrūscī, the Etruscans.  
ex (with abl.), from; ex hāc  
parte, on this side.  
excaecō (1), I blind.  
excēdit, (he) goes out; excēdat,  
let him go out, depart.  
excidium (2), overthrow.  
excipiuntur, (they) are received.  
exclāmat, (he) calls out, ex-  
claims.  
exercītus (4), army.  
exiguus, a, um, adj., small, in-  
significant.  
exit, (he) goes out; exeunt,  
(they) go out.  
expōnō (3), I put out.  
expūlit, (he) expelled, drove  
out.  
expulsus, a, um, having been ex-  
pelled.  
exsilium, iī, exile.  
expectō (1), wait for.  
expectat, (he) awaits; ex-  
spectant, (they) await.  
exsurgunt, (they) rise up.  
extrā (with acc.), outside.  
extrēmus, a, um, adj., extreme.  
exuō (3), I take off.

## F

**facētus**, a, um, adj., *witty, facetious*.  
**faciēs** (5), *face*.  
**facilis**, e, adj., *easy* (superl. **facillimus**).  
**facinus** (gen. **facinōris**), *deed, crime*.  
**faciō**, *I make, do*; **fēcī**, *I have made*; **factus**, *having been made*.  
**fācit**, (he) *makes*; **faciunt**, (they) *make*; **certiōrem facit**, (he) *informs*.  
**factum esse**, perf. pass. inf.n. of **faciō**.  
**facultās** (gen. **facultātis**), *a chance*.  
**fācundus**, a, um, adj., *eloquent*.  
**fāma** (1), *report*.  
**fāmēs**, is, *hunger*.  
**fēcī** (perf. of **faciō**), *I made*.  
**fēliciter**, *happily, successfully*.  
**fēmīna** (1), *a woman*.  
**fēra** (1), *a wild beast*.  
**ferē**, *almost*.  
**ferōx** (gen. **ferōcis**), adj., *fierce, proud*.  
**ferrum** (2), *iron, dagger, sword*.  
**fert**, (he) *brings, carries*.  
**fērus**, a, um, adj., *fierce, wild*.  
**fervēns** (gen. **ferventis**), *red-hot*.  
**fessus**, a, um, adj., *tired*.  
**fieri** (inf. pass. of **faciō**), *to become*.  
**fīlia** (1), *daughter*.  
**fīlius** (2), *son*.  
**fīlum** (2), *a thread*.  
**fīnis** (gen. **fīnis**, masc.), *end*; **fīnēs**, *boundaries, territory*.  
**fīrmus**, a, um, adj., *firm*.  
**flamma** (1), *flame*.  
**flāvus**, a, um, adj., *golden*.  
**flexuōsus**, a, um, adj., *winding*.

## F

**flexūra** (1), *winding, turn*.  
**flōreus**, a, um, adj., *flowery, made of flowers*.  
**flōs** (gen. **flōris**), *flower*.  
**flūctus** (4), *wave*.  
**fluēre**, *to flow*.  
**flūmen** (gen. **flūmīnis**), *river*.  
**foedus** (gen. **foedēris**), *treaty*.  
**foedus**, a, um, adj., *hideous, gloomy*.  
**forīs** (adverb), *out of doors*.  
**forte** (adverb), *by chance, as it happened*.  
**fortis**, e, adj. (abl. plur., **fortibus**), *strong, brave*.  
**fortiter**, *bravely*; comp. **fortius**, *more bravely*; superl. **fortissimē**, *very bravely*.  
**fovea** (1), *a pit*.  
**frāter** (gen. sing., **frātris**; gen. plur., **frātrum**), *brother*.  
**fremēre**, *to roar*.  
**frīgus** (gen. **frīgōris**), *cold*.  
**frōns** (gen. **frontis**), *front, forehead*.  
**frūmentum** (2), *corn*.  
**frūstrā**, *in vain*.  
**fuga** (1), *flight*.  
**fugō** (1), *I put to flight*.  
**fugit**, (he) *flies, escapes*.  
**fugiunt**, (they) *fly, escape*.  
**fuit**, *was*.  
**fulgur** (gen. **fulgūris**), *lightning*; **fulgura**, *flashes of lightning*.  
**funda** (1), *a sling*.  
**fundō** (3), *I rout*.

## G

**galea** (1), *helmet*.  
**Gallīcus**, a, um, adj., *Gallie, belonging to the Gauls*.



G

gelidus, a, um, adj., *cold*.  
 gemitus (4), *groaning*.  
 gēns (gen. gentis), *tribe, nation*.  
 gentēs (plur. of gēns), *nation, tribe*.  
 gēnus (gen. genēris), *a kind*.  
 gerit, *he carries, wears*.  
 Germānus, *a German, German*.  
 gērō, *I carry, wear*; bellum gerere, *to wage war*.  
 gigantēs (3), *giants*.  
 gladius (2), *a sword*.  
 glōria (1), *glory*.  
 glōriōsus, a, um, adj., *glorious*.  
 Graeci, *the Greeks*.  
 Graecūlus (2), *a little Greek*.  
 gradus (gen. gradūs), *a step*.  
 grāmen (gen. grāmīnis), *grass*.  
 grātus, a, um, adj., *welcome, pleasant, pleasing*; grātus in tē, *thankful to (towards) you*.  
 grāvis, e, adj., *heavy, deep*.

H

habeō; ōratiōnem habēre, *to deliver a speech*; cōsilium habēre, *to hold counsel, to hold a meeting*.  
 habet, *(he) has, keeps*; habent, *(they) have, keep*; habētur, *is considered*.  
 habitābat, *lived*.  
 habitō (1), *I inhabit*.  
 hanc (sing. acc. fem. of hīc), *this*.  
 hasta (1), *a spear*.  
 haud multum, *not much*.  
 haustus (4), *a draught, a drink*.  
 herī, *yesterday*.  
 heus! *Ho!*  
 hiems (gen. hiēmis), *winter*.  
 hīs (abl. plur. of hīc), *these*.  
 Hispānia (1), *Spain*.  
 hodiē (adv.), *to-day*.

H

homō (gen. homīnis), *a man*.  
 honōrāvistī, *you have honoured, done honour to*.  
 hōra (1), *hour*.  
 horribile (from horribilis), adj., *horrible*.  
 horridus, a, um, adj., *matted (hair)*.  
 hortus (2), *garden*.  
 hospes (gen. hospitis), *a guest*.  
 hostis (gen. hostis), *an enemy*; hostēs, *the enemy*.  
 hūc (adv.), *hither*.  
 hūmānissimī, *the most civilised*.  
 hūmānus, a, um, adj., *human*.  
 humus (2, fem.), *ground, earth*.

I

ibat, *(he) was going, walking*.  
 ibi (adv.), *there*.  
 idem (see p. 84), *the same*.  
 igitur, *therefore*.  
 ignārus, a, um, adj., *ignorant*.  
 ignis (gen. ignis), *fire*.  
 ignōrō (1), *I am ignorant of, do not know*.  
 ille (nom. sing. fem. illa, gen. sing. illius, acc. plur. fem. illās; see p. 83), *that*.  
 illō (sing. abl. masc. or neut. of ille), *that*.  
 illō (adv.), *thither, to that place*.  
 imāgō (gen. imāgīnis, fem.), *image, likeness*.  
 imber (gen. imbris), *a shower of rain*.  
 imberbis, e, adj., *beardless*.  
 imbuit, *dyes*.  
 immēmōr (gen. immemōris), adj., *unmindful, forgetful*.  
 impendit capitī, *overhangs his head*.



## I

imperātor, ōris, *general* (emperor).  
 imperium (2), *rule*.  
 impētus (4), *charge, rush*.  
 impiger, impigra, impigrum, adj., *active, energetic*.  
 impleō (perf. implēvī), *I fill*.  
 implicītus, a, um, *enveloped*.  
 implōrant, (they) *entreat for*.  
 implōrō (1), *I entreat for*.  
 impōsītus, a, um, *set, perched*.  
 impūdēns, entis, adj., *impudent, shameless*.  
 imus, a, um, adj., *lowest*; ad imum (collem), *to the bottom (of the hill)*.  
 in, with abl., *in, on*; with acc., *into, on to, against*.  
 inaudītus, a, um, *unheard of*.  
 incertus, a, um, adj., *uncertain*.  
 incēdit, (he) *falls into*; incidunt, (they) *fall into*.  
 incītāt, (he) *urges on*; incitant, (they) *urge on*.  
 incitātis equīs, *their horses having been urged on*; (with their horses at a gallop).  
 incōla (1), *an inhabitant*.  
 incōlō (3), *I inhabit*; incolunt, (they) *inhabit*.  
 incultus, a, um, adj., *uncivilised*.  
 incursiō (gen. incursiōnis), *assault, inroad*.  
 indūcuntur, *are led on*.  
 infēsus, a, um, adj., *enraged, furious*.  
 inficiunt, (they) *dye*.  
 infīgō (3), *I thrust in, dig in*.  
 infinītus, a, um, adj., *infinite, innumerable*.  
 ingēns (gen. ingentis, abl. in-

## I

gentī, nom. plur. neut., *ingentia*), adj., *huge*.  
 ingrātus, a, um, adj., *ungrateful*.  
 in his, *among them*.  
 inīquus, a, um, adj., *unfavourable*.  
 inicit, (he) *throws over, thrusts*.  
 init, (he) *forms*.  
 inquit, (he) *says*.  
 insīdiae (1), *snare*s.  
 insīdior (1), ārī, ātus (deponent verb), *lie in ambush*.  
 instat, *approaches, is almost come*.  
 institūtus, a, um, *arranged, begun*.  
 instruō (3), *I draw up*.  
 insūla (1), *island*.  
 insūper, *on the top*.  
 intelligit, (he) *knows of, understands*.  
 intentus, a, um, adj., *intent*.  
 inter (with acc.), *among, between*.  
 interdum (adverb), *sometimes*.  
 interficiō, *I kill*; interficere, *to kill*; interficiunt, (they) *kill*; interficitur, *he is killed, put to death*: (perf. interfēcī).  
 interrogō (1), *I ask, question*.  
 intrā (with acc.), *within, inside*.  
 intrat, (he *enters*) (intrō, āre, āvī, ātum).  
 intrūdō (3, perf. intrūsī), *I thrust in*.  
 intus (adverb), *within*.  
 invēniō, *I find*; invēnī, *I have found, I found*; inveniuntur, (they) *are found*.  
 invīsus, a, um, *hateful* (invidēō).  
 invītō (1), *I invite*.  
 ipse (see p. 86), *himself, etc.*  
 ipse sē interfecit, *he (himself) kills himself*.

I

irātus, a, um, *angry, enraged*.  
irruunt, (*they*) *rush on*.  
is (gen. ejus, p. 84), *this; he, she, it*.  
iste (see p. 87), *that (of yours)*.  
ita, *so*.  
Italia (1), *Italy*.  
itaque, *so*.  
iter, itineris (neut.), *way; iter facit, he marches*.  
itērum, *again; iterum atque iterum, again and again*.

J

jacent, (*they*) *lie*.  
jāciō (perf. jēcī), *I throw*.  
jam, *already*.  
jānua, *door (of a house)*.  
jubeō (perf. jūssī), *I order*.  
jubet, (*he*) *orders*.  
jūdex, icis (masc.), *judge*.  
jūdicium (2), *a trial*.  
jūssa, ōrum (2), *orders (mostly in plural)*.  
jūssus (gen. jūssūs), *order, command*.  
juvēnis (gen. sing. juvenis, gen. plur. juvenum), *a young man*.  
juventus (gen. juventūtis, fem.), *youth*.

L

labor (gen. labōris, acc. labōrem), *toil, labour*.  
labōrō (1), *work*.  
labrum (2), *lip*.  
labyrinthus (2), *labyrinth, maze*.  
lāc (gen. lactis), *milk*.  
lacērō (1), *I tear apart, in pieces*.  
lacrīma (1), *a tear*.

L

laetus, a, um, adj., *happy, joyful; lacti inveniunt, are delighted to find*.  
lapis (gen. lāpīdis, masc.), *a stone*.  
lātus (gen. latēris), *side, flank*.  
laudat, (*he*) *praises; laudant, (they) praise; laudātur, is praised; laudantur, are praised*.  
laus (gen. laudis), *praise*.  
lēgātus (2), *ambassador*.  
lēgibus (dat. plur. of lēx), *laws*.  
legiō (gen. legiōnis, fem.), *a legion*.  
lēgit, (*he*) *reads; legunt, (they) read; legitur, is read*.  
lentus, a, um, adj., *slow*.  
leō (gen. leōnis), *a lion*.  
lēviter, *gently, softly*.  
liber (gen. librī), *a book*.  
liber, a, um, *free*.  
libērātus, *set free*.  
libērī, *children*.  
libērō (1), *I set free; liberāre, to set free*.  
lignum (2), *wood, log of wood*.  
lingua Latīna, *the Latin tongue, language*.  
lītus (gen. litōris), *shore, coast*.  
lōcus (2), *a place*.  
longē (adverb), *by far, far, a great deal*.  
longius (adverb, comparative degree), *at some distance*.  
longurius (2), *a long pole*.  
longus, a, um, adj., *long*.  
loquāx (gen. loquācis), *talkative*.  
loquor (3), locūtus, *speak (deponent)*.  
lōrica (1), *a cuirass*.  
lūce (abl. sing. of lūx), *light, dawn*.

## L

**lūmen**, inis (3), *the light*  
**lūna** (1), *the moon*.

## M

**māciē** (abl. sing. of **māciēs**), *with leanness*.  
**magīcus** a, um, adj., *magic*.  
**magister** (gen. **magistrī**), *a master (of pupils)*.  
**māgnitūdō** (gen. **māgnitūdinis**), *size*.  
**māgnopĕrē**, *greatly*.  
**māgnus**, *great, large, big* (comp. **mājor**, superl. **māximus**).  
**mājōrēs**, um, *ancestors*.  
**mālus**, a, um, *bad*; **pĕjor**, *worse*; **pessimus**, *worst*.  
**mālus** (2), *a mast*.  
**mānāre**, *to flow, drop, stream*.  
**māne**, *in the morning*.  
**mānet**, (he) *remains*; **manent**, (they) *remain*.  
**mānus** (4, fem.), *a hand, a force of soldiers*; **pūgnam** in **manibus** *faciunt*, *they engage in a hand to hand fight*.  
**māre** (gen. **maris**), *sea*.  
**maritīmus**, a, um, adj., *belonging to the sea*.  
**māter** (gen. sing. **mātris**, gen. plur. **mātrum**), *mother*.  
**māximus**, a, um, adj., *greatest, largest, biggest* (superl. of **māgnus**).  
**mē**, acc. of ego.  
**mēcum** (**mē** and **cum**), *with me*.  
**mēdius**, a, um, adj., *middle*; in agreement with a noun, *in the middle of*.  
**mēlior** (neut. **melius**, gen. **melīoris**, comp. of **bonus**), *better*.  
**melius** (adverb), *better*.  
**membrum** (2), *member, limb*.

## M

**mēmōr** (gen. **memōris**), *mindful*.  
**mēnsis** (gen. **mēnsis**, masc.), *month*.  
**mercātor** (gen. **mercātōris**), *a merchant*.  
**metallum** (2), *a metal*.  
**metū** (abl. of **metus**), *with fear*.  
**metus** (4), *fear*.  
**meus**, a, um, *my, mine*.  
**mī**, voc. of **meus**.  
**mīles** (gen. **mīlitis**), *soldier*.  
**militia** (1), *military service*.  
**mille** (indeclinable in sing., plur. **mīlia**, see p. 70), *a thousand*.  
**mināx** (gen. **minācis**), adj., *threatening*.  
**minīmus**, a, um, *least, smallest* (superl. of **parvus**).  
**ministerium**, (2), *ministry, attendance*.  
**minor** (neut. **minus**, gen. **minōris**), *less, smaller* (comp. of **parvus**); **nātū minor**, *younger*.  
**mīror** (1), *I wonder at*. This is what is called a "deponent" verb. It has active meaning, but passive form.  
**mīrus**, a, um, adj., *wonderful*.  
**miser**, **misēra**, **misērum**, adj., *unhappy, wretched, miserable*.  
**miserandus**, a, um, *piteous*.  
**misericordia** (1), *pity*.  
**mittit** (3), (he) *sends*; **mittunt**, (they) *send*. (**ere**, **mīsī**, **mīs-sum**).  
**mittitur**, *is sent*.  
**mittunt**, (they) *send*.  
**mīxtus**, a, um, *mixed*.  
**mōdo** (adverb), *only*.  
**mōdus** (2), *manner*.  
**molestus**, a, um, adj., *troublesome, annoying (a nuisance)*.

M

mōns (gen. montis), *M.*, a mountain.  
 mōnstrum (2), a monster.  
 mora (1), delay.  
 morbus (2), disease, sickness.  
 mors (gen. mortis), *F.*, death.  
 mortuus, a, um, adj., dead.  
 mōs (gen. mōris), *M.*, manner, custom, habit, character.  
 mōtus, a, um, moved.  
 moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move.  
 mox, soon.  
 mulget, (*he*) milks.  
 mulier (gen. muliēris), woman.  
 multitūdō (gen. multitudinis), a multitude, a large number.  
 multō (adv.), by much, much.  
 multum, much.  
 multus, a, um, adj., much.  
 mundus (2), the world.  
 mūniō (4), I fortify.  
 mūnitiōnēs, fortifications.  
 mūniunt, (*they*) fortify.  
 murmurō (1), I murmur.  
 mūrus (2), a wall.

N

narrant, (*they*) relate.  
 nātū (abl. of nātus, 4), by birth;  
 nātū māior, older; nātū minor, younger; nātū māximus, oldest; nātū minimus, youngest.  
 nātus, having been born; duōs annōs nātus, two years old.  
 nauta (1), a sailor.  
 nāvī (abl. of nāvis), in a ship.  
 nāvis (gen. nāvis), a ship; nāvis longa, a war-ship.  
 nē, conj., that not, not, (pages 137 and 141).

N

-nē (used in asking a question, see p. 112).  
 nebūla (1), a cloud.  
 nec, nor.  
 nēcat, (*he*) slays.  
 necō (1), I slay.  
 nēgō (1), I deny. Negat sē venīre posse, he said that he could not come.  
 nēmō (inis), (nē, homō) nobody, for the genitive use nullius, for the ablative use nūllō.  
 neque, nor; neque — neque, neither — nor; neque tamen, nor yet, not however.  
 nesciō, I do not know.  
 nēve, nor (introducing a clause of purpose after nē).  
 niger, nīgra, nigrum, adj., black.  
 nihil (not declined, neut.), nothing.  
 nimium, too much, too.  
 nōbilis, e, adj., noble.  
 nocte (abl. of nox), in the night.  
 nocturnus, a, um, adj., belonging to the night, nightly, night.  
 nōluērunt, (*they*) would not, were not willing.  
 nōmen (gen. nōmīnis), name.  
 nōn, not; nōn jam, no longer.  
 nōs (nom. and acc.), we, us.  
 noster, nostra, nostrum, our.  
 nōtus, a, um, known.  
 novus, a, um, adj., new, strange.  
 nox (gen. noctis), night.  
 nūbēs (gen. nūbis), cloud.  
 nūllus (see p. 88), no.  
 numerus (2), number.  
 nunc, now.  
 nunquam, never.  
 nūntiō (1), I announce.  
 nūntius (2), a message, messenger.



## O

ob (with acc.), *on account of*.  
 obiit, (he) *died*.  
 obsident, (they) *besiege*.  
 obtruncat, (he) *cuts down, strikes down*.  
 occēdītur, (he) *is killed*.  
 oculus (2), *eye*.  
 occupābant, (they) *occupied, seized*.  
 octōgintā, *eighty*.  
 omne tempus, *for all time, for ever*.  
 omnibus (abl. plur. of omnis), *all*.  
 omnis, omne, adj., *all*.  
 ōnus (gen. onēris), *n., burden*.  
 opem (acc.), *aid*.  
 opēre (abl. of opus), *on the work*.  
 opportunus, a, um, *favourable*.  
 oppressus, a, um, *oppressed, weighed down*.  
 opprimit (from opprimō; perf. oppressi), *overcomes, swamps*.  
 oppugnō (1), *attack, besiege*.  
 optimē (adv.), *very well*.  
 optimus (superl. of bonus), *very good, best*.  
 optō (1), *desire*.  
 opus (gen. opēris), *n., work*.  
 ōra (1), *shore*.  
 ōrātiō (gen. ōrātiōnis), *speech, oration*.  
 ōrātor (gen. ōrātōris), *orator*.  
 orbēs faciunt, (they) *form circles* (= our squares).  
 ōrdō (gen. ōrdīnis, masc.), *rank, order*.  
 ōre (see ōs).  
 ōrnat, he *adorns, decorates, equips, fits out*; ōrnant, (they) *adorn, etc.*  
 ōrnātus (gen. ōrnātūs), *adornment, grand dress*.  
 ōrō (1), *I pray*.

## O

ōs (gen. ōris), *mouth, face*.  
 ōs (gen. ossis), *a bone*.  
 ōstium (2), *entrance, door*.  
 ōvis (gen. ovis), *a sheep*.

## P

pācem (acc. sing. of pāx), *peace*.  
 paene, (adv.), *almost*.  
 pallidus, a, um, adj., *pale*.  
 pālus (gen. palī), *stake*.  
 pālūs (gen. palūdis), *marsh*.  
 pānis (gen. pānis), *bread*.  
 pār (gen. paris), *equal*.  
 parēns (gen. parentis), *a parent*.  
 pārēre (inf. of pāreō, with dat.), *to obey*.  
 parō (1), *I prepare*.  
 pars (gen. partis), *a part, some*.  
 partibus; multis partibus, *a great deal*.  
 partim, *partly*.  
 parvus, a, um, adj., *small, little*.  
 pāscō, *I feed*; pāscit, (he) *feeds*.  
 passus (4), *a pace* (see p. 70).  
 pater (gen. sing. patris, gen. plur. patrum), *father*.  
 patrēs, um, *the Fathers*.  
 patria (1), *native country*.  
 pauci, *a few*.  
 paullatim, adv., *by degrees, little by little*.  
 paululum, *for a bit*.  
 pauper (gen. paupēris), adj., *poor*.  
 pāx (gen. pācis), *peace*.  
 pecūnia (1), *money, a sum of money*.  
 pēcus (gen. pecōris), *a herd, flock*.  
 pedester (pedestris, pedestre) adj., *foot*; cōpia pedestrēs, *foot-forces, infantry*; iter pedestre, *a journey on foot*.



P

**pējor** (comp. of *malus*), *worse*.  
**pellibus** (abl. plur. of *pellis*), (3) *with skins*.  
**pendent**, (they) *hang*.  
**pendit**, (he) *pays*; **pendunt**, (they) *pay*.  
**penētrō** (1), *I penetrate, make my way*.  
**per** (prep. with acc.), *through, during, over*.  
**perculusus**, a, um, *stricken*.  
**percūtit**, (he) *strikes*.  
**pergō** (3), *proceed*.  
**perpētūsus**, a, um, adj., *perpetual*.  
**persequor** (3), deponent verb, *follow*.  
**pēs** (gen. *pēdis*), *foot*; in *pedēs sē dedērunt*, *took to their heels, ran away*.  
**pessimus**, a, um, (superl. of *malus*), *worst, very bad*.  
**pestifer**, a, um, adj., *pestilential, poisonous*.  
**pētīt**, (he) *asks for, seeks*; **pētunt**, (they) *ask for, seek*.  
**petunt**, (they) *seek*; *make for, attack*.  
**philosōphus** (2), *a philosopher*.  
**piger**, *pigra*, *pigrum*, adj., *lazy*.  
**piscis** (3), *a fish*.  
**plēbs** (gen. *plēbis*), *ῑ*, *the commons*.  
**plēnus**, a, um, adj., *full*.  
**plērīque**, *the greater number, most*.  
**plūrimus**, a, um, adj., *very much*; *plūrimī*, *very many*.  
**pōcūlum** (2), *a cup*.  
**poēma** (gen. *poēmātis*) (neuter), *a poem*.  
**poena** (1), *penalty, punishment*.  
**poēta** (1), *a poet*.

P

**polītē**, adv., *elegantly*.  
**polluitur**, *is polluted*.  
**pōmum** (2), *fruit*.  
**pōnit**, (he) *places*.  
**pōnō**, *I place*; **pōsuī** (perf.), *I placed, I have placed*.  
**pōnunt**, (they) *place*.  
**porrīgīt**, *he stretches forth*.  
**Porsīna** (1), king of the Etruscans.  
**porta** (1), *gate, door*.  
**portat**, (he) *carries*; **portant**, (they) *carry*.  
**portō** (1), *carry*.  
**portus** (4), *a harbour*.  
**posse** (inf. of *possum*), *to be able* (see *negō*).  
**possent**, imperf. subj. of *possum*.  
**possident**, (they) *possess*.  
**possit**, pres. subj. of *possum*.  
**post** (adverb), *afterwards*; prep. *behind, after*; **post Christum nātum**, *after the birth of Christ* (our A.D. in dates).  
**postērus**, a, um, adj., *next, following*.  
**postquam**, *after that*.  
**postrēmō** (adverb), *last of all*.  
**postrēmus**, a, um, adj., *last*.  
**postūlat**, (he) *demands*.  
**postulō** (1), *demand*.  
**potēns** (gen. *potentis*), *powerful*.  
**pōtest**, (he) (it) *is able, can*; **possunt**, (they) *are able, can*.  
**potestās** (gen. *potestātis*), *power*.  
**praeceps** (gen. *praecepītis*), adj., *headlong, precipitous*.  
**praeēdit**, (he) *cuts off*.  
**praeclārissimē**, *very splendidly* (adverb of the following).  
**praeclārissimus**, a, um, adj., *very celebrated*.

## P

praeclārus, a, um, adj., *celebrated*.  
 praedō (gen. praedōnis), *a pirate*.  
 praemium (2), *a reward*.  
 praestant, (they) *excel, have the advantage*.  
 praeter (prep. with acc.), *besides, except*.  
 prātum (2), *a meadow*.  
 prēcibus, *with prayers*.  
 pretium (2), *a price*.  
 prīmō (adverb), *at first*.  
 primum (adverb), *first*.  
 prīmus, a, um, adj., *first*.  
 princeps (gen. principis), *chief, leader*.  
 prius (adverb), *first*.  
 prō (with abl.), *before, on behalf of, instead of*.  
 probō (1), *I approve*.  
 prōcēdit, (he) *advances*.  
 prōdigium (2), *a prodigy, wonder*.  
 prōdītor, ōris, *traitor*.  
 proelium (2), *battle*.  
 prohibet, (he) *keeps off*.  
 prōiciūnt, *they throw forth*.  
 prōnus, a, um, adj., *headlong*.  
 prope (prep. with acc., also adverb), *near, nearly*.  
 prōpērō (1), *I hasten*.  
 propius (adverb), *nearer*.  
 prōra (1), *a prow*.  
 prōvōcō (1), *I challenge*.  
 proximus, a, um, adj., *the next, the following; ē proximō, from quite near*.  
 prūdentē, *wisely*.  
 prūdētia (1), *skill*.  
 puella (1), *a girl*.  
 puer (gen. puērī), *a boy*.  
 pūgna (1), *battle*.  
 pūgnātur, *it is fought*.

## Q

pūgnō (1), *I fight*.  
 pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, adj., *beautiful*.  
 Pūnicus, a, um, adj., *Punic; Carthaginian*.  
 pūniō (4), *I punish*.

## Q

quadrāgēsīmus, a, um, num. adj., *fortieth*.  
 quadringētēsīmus, a, um, num. adj., *four-hundredth*.  
 quae (see quī, p. 92), *which*.  
 quaerō, ere, sīvī, sītum, *ask*.  
 quaerit, *he asks for, inquires for; quaerunt, (they) ask for, seek*.  
 quaesō, *I pray*.  
 quam, *than; with a note of exclamation, how!*  
 quamquam, *although*.  
 quam ob rem (adv.), *for what reason*.  
 quandō, *when?*  
 quantus, a, um, *how great*.  
 quatit, (he) *shakes*.  
 -que, *and*. The *que* is attached to the second of the two words; "brothers and sisters" is frātrēs sorōrēsque (or frātrēs et sorōrēs).  
 quercus (4, fem.), *an oak*.  
 quī, *who* (see p. 92).  
 quī (nom. plur. of quī), *those who*.  
 quia, *because*.  
 quid, indef. pron., *anything* (p. 141, foot-note).  
 quid, *what?* (See quis, p. 93.)  
 quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *a certain; quīdam (nom. plur. masc.), certain*.

Q

quidem, *indeed*.  
 quidquid (nom. or acc. neuter of  
 quicquid), *whatever*.  
 quiēs (gen. quietis), *rest, quiet*.  
 quiētus, a, um, adj., *quiet, inactive*.  
 quīn, conj. [quī, nē], *but that, that*.  
 quīnquāgēsīmus, a, um, num.  
 adj., *fiftieth*.  
 quīnquāgīntā, *fifty*.  
 quīnque, *five*.  
 quisque, *each*.  
 quod (see quī, p. 92), *which*.  
 quod (adverb), *because*.  
 quōmodo, *how?*  
 quondam, *once*.  
 quot, *how many?*  
 quotiēns, *how often?* in XIII.,  
*as often as*.

R

rādunt, (they) *shave*.  
 rāmus (2), *a branch*.  
 rārus, a, um, adj., *rare, extraordinary*.  
 recēdit, (he) *retires; recēdunt,*  
*(they) retire, draw back*.  
 rēctē, *rightly*.  
 rēctus, a, um, adj., *right*.  
 reddō, *I give back, return; redde,*  
*give back!*  
 redeunt, (they) *come back, return*.  
 redīgīt, (he) *reduces, subdues;*  
*redīgunt, (they) reduce*.  
 redīt, (he) *returns; redeunt,*  
*(they) return*.  
 redūcit, (he) *leads back*.  
 rēgīna (1), *a queen*.  
 regiō (gen. regiōnis), *district,*  
*region*.

R

rēgius, a, um, adj., *royal*.  
 rēgnō (1), *I reign*.  
 regō (3), *I rule, steer*.  
 rēgūlus (2), *a prince*.  
 relīgō (1), *I tie*.  
 relīquō, (3), *I leave; reliquī, I*  
*have left, I left*.  
 relīquī, ae, a, adj., *the rest, the*  
*remainder*.  
 remōvet, (he) *removes, with-*  
*draws*.  
 renovātur, *is renewed*.  
 rēs (5), *thing, fact, matter, af-*  
*fair*.  
 rēs pūblica (1), *state*.  
 respondet, (he) *answers*.  
 restat, (he) (it) *remains*.  
 retrāhit, (he) *draws back; retra-*  
*hunt, (they) draw back, drag*  
*back*.  
 revertit, *he returns; revertunt,*  
*(they) return*.  
 revertō (3, perf. revertī), *I re-*  
*turn, come back*.  
 rēx (gen. rēgis), *a king*.  
 rīdēns, *smiling, laughing*.  
 rīdeō, *I laugh*.  
 rōbustus, a, um, adj., *strong*.  
 rogāre, *to ask*.  
 Rōmānus, a, um, adj., *Roman;*  
 Rōmānī, *the Romans*.  
 rōsa (1), *a rose*.  
 rota (1), *wheel*.  
 ruīna (1), *downfall*.

S

saepe, *often; saepius, more*  
*often; saepissimē, very*  
*often*.  
 saevus, a, um, adj., *cruel, fierce*.  
 sagīnābat, (he) *used to feast,*  
*gorge*.

## S

sagitta (1), *an arrow*.  
 sagittarius, a, um, adj., *using bow and arrows; sagittarii, archers*.  
 salus (gen. salutis), *safety*.  
 salvus, a, um (adj.), *safe*.  
 sanguis (gen. sanguinis), *blood*.  
 sapiens (gen. sapientis), *wise, a wise man*.  
 sapienter, adv., *wisely*.  
 sapientia (1), *wisdom*.  
 saxum, *rock*.  
 sciō (4, īvī, itum), *I know*.  
 scriba (1), *a secretary*.  
 scribō (3), scripsī, scriptum, *write*.  
 sē ipse interficit, (he) *kills himself*.  
 sēcēdō (3), *I secede, withdraw*.  
 sēcum, *with him* (cum, *with*, is tacked on to sē).  
 secundus, a, um, adj., *second*.  
 secūtūrus, a, um, *in order to follow, with the intention of following*.  
 sed, *but*.  
 sēdeō, *I sit*.  
 sēges (gen. segētis), *a crop*.  
 Semelē (gen. Semelēs), *Semele*.  
 semper, *always*.  
 sēnex (gen. sing. senis, gen. plur. senum), *an old man*.  
 sentiō (perf. sēnsī), *I feel*.  
 septendēcim, *seventeen*.  
 sequitur, (he) *follows*.  
 sermō (gen. sermōnis), *conversation, talk; in X., language*.  
 serpēs (gen. serpentis), *a serpent*.  
 sērunt, (they) *sow*.  
 servat, *keeps*.  
 servus (2), *a slave*.  
 sescentī, ae, a, num. adj., *six hundred*.

## S

sī, *if*.  
 sī cui, *if to any one; sī quid, if . . . anything*. See footnote, p. 141.  
 sic, *so*.  
 siccus, a, um, adj., *dry*.  
 Sicilia (1), *Sicily*.  
 signum (2), *a sign, mark, standard*.  
 silentium (2), *silence*.  
 silva (1), *a wood, forest*.  
 similia (plur. neut. of similis), *like*.  
 similis, e, adj., *like* (superl. simillimus).  
 simul atque, *as soon as*.  
 sīn, conjunction, *but if*.  
 sine (with abl.), *without*.  
 singulāris, e, adj., *extraordinary, single*.  
 sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, adj., *left*.  
 sitit, *thirsts, is thirsty*.  
 socius (2), *a companion*.  
 solum (2), *earth*.  
 solum (adverb), *only*.  
 sōlus, a, um, adj., *alone* (p. 88).  
 solvō (3), *I cut loose, put off (a ship)*.  
 somnus (2), *sleep*.  
 soror (gen. sorōris), *sister*.  
 spatiōsus, a, um, adj., *spacious, roomy*.  
 spectāculum (2), *sight, spectacle*.  
 spectat, (it) *looks*.  
 speculātōrēs, *the scouts*.  
 specus (gen. specūs), *a cave*.  
 spēs (5), *a hope*.  
 splendidus, a, um, adj., *splendid*.  
 spūma (1), *foam*.  
 squālīdus, a, um, adj., *dirty*.  
 stantem (acc. of stāns), *standing*.



S

stat, (*he*) stands.  
**statim**, at once.  
 sternit, (*he*) lays; sternunt, (*they*) lay.  
 stipendium (1), pay.  
 strepitus (gen. strepitūs), clank-ing.  
 stultitia (1), folly.  
 stultus, a, um, adj., foolish.  
 sub (prep. with abl.), under; sub vesp̄erum, about evening-time.  
 subitō, suddenly.  
 sublātus est, was removed.  
 submittuntur, (*they*) are sent up.  
 subrideō (perf. subrīsī), I smile.  
 sudor (gen. sudōris), sweat.  
 suī (nom. plur.), his own men.  
 sūmere, to take.  
 summōvent, (*they*) remove.  
**summus**, a, um, adj., highest, extreme, great; **summus collis**, the top of the hill; **summā vī**, with all their might; **summīs Volscōrum cōpiīs**, with all the forces of the Volsci.  
 suō quisque tempore, each at his own time (at the time that he finds convenient).  
 super (prep. with abl.), above.  
**sup̄erat**, (*he*) defeats; **sup̄erant**, (*they*) defeat; in X., is greater than.  
 superātus, a, um, overcome.  
 superbia (1), pride.  
 superbus, a, um, adj., proud.  
 superius (neut. of superior), upper.  
 superō (1), pass over, overcome.  
 supersunt, (*they*) remain over, are left.

S

suprā (prep. with acc.), over, above.  
 surdus, a, um, adj., deaf.  
 sūrgit, (*he*) rises.  
 sustinent, withstand, stand up against.  
 suus, a, um, his (own), their (own).

T

tābēs, is, F., wasting, consumption, decay.  
 taceō, I am silent, I hold my tongue.  
 tālis, e (gen. tālis), adj., such, the following.  
 tamen, however.  
 tamque, and so.  
 tandem, at length.  
 tantus, a, um, adj., so great, such.  
 taurus (2), a bull.  
 tē (acc. of tū), you (of one person).  
 tēlum (2), a dart.  
 tempestās (gen. tempestātis), a storm.  
 templum (2), temple.  
 tempus (gen. tempōris), time.  
 tēnet, (*he*) holds; tenent, (*they*) hold.  
 tergum (2), back, rear.  
 terra (1), land.  
 terret, (*he*) frightens; **terrent**, (*they*) frighten; **terrētur**, is frightened; **terrentur**, are frightened.  
 terribiles (from terribilis, e, adj.), terrible.  
 timēns, fearing.  
 tīmet, he fears; **timent**, (*they*) fear.  
 timor (gen. timōris), fear.



## T

tollitque, *and (he) lifts, takes up.*  
 tollō (3), *I take away.*  
 torrēns (gen. torrentis), *torrent, brook.*  
 torrēns (gen. torrentis, adj.), *burning, as it burned.*  
 tōtius (gen. sing. of tōtus).  
 tōtus, a, um, *the whole* (see p. 88).  
 tractat, *(he) treats.*  
 trāns (prep. with acc.), *across.*  
 trānsit, *(he) crosses*; trānse-  
 unt, *(they) cross.*  
 trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred.*  
 tredēcim, *thirteen.*  
 trepīdus, a, um, adj., *excited.*  
 trēs (see p. 70), *three.*  
 tribūnal, ālis, *tribunal, throne.*  
 trīcēsīmus, a, um, num. adj., *thir-  
 tieth.*  
 trīgintā, *thirty.*  
 trīstis, e, adj., *sad.*  
 Trōja (1), *Troy.*  
 trūdīt, *pushes.*  
 tū (p. 80), *you* (of one person).  
 tulit, *(he) took*, perf. of ferō.  
 tum, *then.*  
 tunc, *then.*  
 turba (1), *a crowd.*  
 tuus, a, um, *your* (of one person).

## U

ubi, *where?*  
 ūndēvīgintī, *nineteen.*  
 ūndique (adverb), *from all sides.*  
 ūnus, a, um, num. adj., *one* (see p. 88).  
 urbe (abl. of urbs).  
 urbs (gen. urbis), *city.*  
 ursus (2), *a bear.*  
 ūsū, *from the use.*  
 ūsus (gen. ūsūs, abl. ūsū), *use, experience.*

## U

ut, adv. and conj., *as; that, in order that, so that.*  
 uter, a, um, adj. (see p. 88), *which?* (of two).  
 ūtilis, e, adj., *useful.*  
 utinam (adverb), *would that, O that, I wish that.*  
 uxor (gen. uxōris), *wife.*

## V

vāleo (2), *I am well*; valē, *farewell, good-bye* (to one person); valēte, *farewell, good-bye* (to more than one person).  
 valīdus, a, um, adj., *strong.*  
 vallis (gen. vallis), *valley.*  
 vallum (2), *a rampart.*  
 vastat, *(he) lays waste*; vastant, *(they) lay waste.*  
 vastō (1), *lay waste.*  
 vastus, a, um, adj., *vast.*  
 vectīgal (gen. vectīgālis), *a tax.*  
 vel, conj., *or.*  
 velut, *like, as if.*  
 vēniō, *I come*; vēnī, *I have come, I came.*  
 vēnit, *(he) comes*; veniunt, *(they) come.*  
 venter (gen. ventris), *the stomach, belly.*  
 ventus (2), *the wind.*  
 verbum (2), *a word.*  
 vērō (adverb), *however.*  
 vertunt, *(they) turn.*  
 vērus, a, um, adj., *true, just.*  
 vespēri (adv. from vesper), *in the evening.*  
 vester, tra, trum, *your* (of more than one person).  
 vestis (gen. vestis), *clothing*; vestēs, *clothes.*

V

vestiuntur, *they are clothed, clothe themselves.*  
 vī (abl. of vīs), *with force, might.*  
 via (1), *way, path, road, course.*  
 viātor (gen. viātōris), *a traveller.*  
 vibrō (1), *I brandish.*  
 vicīnus, a, um, adj., *neighbouring.*  
 victīma (1), *a victim.*  
 victōria (1), *victory.*  
 victus, a, um, *conquered.*  
 vidēns, *seeing.*  
 vīdeō, *I see.* [see.  
 vīdet, *(he) sees; vident, (they)*  
 videor (2), *seem.*  
 vidētur, *seems; videntur, are*  
*seen, seem.*  
 vigeō (2), *I flourish.*  
 vīgintī (indeclinable), *twenty.*  
 villa (1), *a country-house (do-*  
*mus, a town-house).*  
 vinciō (4), vinxī, vinctum, *I bind.*  
 vincit, *he conquers.*  
 vincō (3) (perf. vīcī), *I conquer.*  
 vinculum (2), *a chain.*  
 vīdīcō (1), *I punish.*  
 vīnum, *wine.*  
 vir (gen. virī), *a man; the word*  
*is only used in praise, e.g.*  
*bonus vir; "all men" is*  
*omnēs hominēs.*

V

virtūs (gen. virtūtis), *bravery,*  
*courage, virtue.*  
 vīs (abl. vī), *force, strength.*  
 vīta (1), *life.*  
 vītis (gen. vītis), *a vine.*  
 vitrum (2), *wood (a plant used*  
*for dyeing).*  
 vīvō (3), *I live.*  
 vīvunt, *(they) live.*  
 vix, *scarcely.*  
 vōcō (1), *I call.*  
 Volscī (2), *the Volscians.*  
 volucris, is, *a bird.*  
 volūmen (gen. volūminis), *coil.*  
 voluptās (gen. voluptātis), *pleas-*  
*ure.*  
 volvitur, *is whirled.*  
 vōs, *you (plural of tū).*  
 vōx (gen. vōcis), *voice.*  
 vulgō (adv.), *generally, com-*  
*monly, mostly.*  
 vulnerātus, a, um, *wounded.*  
 vulneribus (abl. plur. of vulnus),  
*with lapidum, by the wounds*  
*inflicted by the stones.*  
 vulnus (gen. vulnēris), *wound.*  
 vult, *he wishes.*  
 vultus (4), *look, expression.*

## ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

*Obs. A figure after a word denotes the declension or conjugation to which it belongs.*

*Obs. The letters M, F, N in small capitals refer to the gender.*

### A

**able**, is able, *pōtest*; are able, *possunt*.  
**absent**, is absent, *abest*; are absent, *absunt*.  
**active**, *impiger, impigra, impigrum*.  
**adorn**, (he) adorns, *ōrnat*; (they) adorn, *ōrant*.  
**adversity**, *rēs adversae* (i.e. adverse things).  
**advise**, *moneō* (2).  
**affair**, *rēs* (5), F.  
**again**, *iterum*; again and again, *iterum atque iterum*.  
**Alexander**, *Alexander* (gen. *Alexandrī*).  
**alive**, to be, *vivere* (3).  
**all**, *omnis, omne*.  
**alone**, *sōlus* (gen. *sōlius*, p. 88).  
**already**, *jam*.  
**also**, *etiam*; not only — but also, *nōn solum — sed etiam*.  
**always**, *semper*.  
**ambassador**, *lēgātus* (2).  
**ancestors**, *mājōrēs*.  
**ancient**, *antiquus, a, um*.  
**and**, *et, -que*. ("Brothers and sisters," for instance, may be either *frātrēs et sorōrēs*, or *frātrēs sorōrēsque*.)

### A

**animal**, *animal, n.* (p. 33).  
**announce** (to), *nūntiāre*.  
**another**, *alius* (see p. 88).  
**approach**, *adventus* (4).  
**are** (they), *sunt*.  
**arms**, *arma, ōrum, n.*  
**army**, *exercitus* (4), M.  
**arrival**, *adventus* (4), M.  
**ask**, *rogō* (1).  
**ask for**, (he) asks for, *pētīt*; (they) ask for, *petunt*.  
**asleep** (to be), *dormire*.  
**assemble**, *conveniō* (4), *ire, vērī, ventum*.  
**assist** (to), *adesse* (with dative).  
**at Athens**, *Athēnīs* (locative case).  
**Athens**, *Athēnae*.  
**at once**, *statim*.  
**attack**, *impetus* (4), M.  
**await** (to), *expectāre*.  
**away** (to be), *abesse*.

### B

**bad**, *mālus, a, um*.  
**beautiful**, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum*.  
**before**, *prō* (preposition with the ablative).

## B

beseech, *obsecrō* (1).  
 best, *optimus*, *a*, *um*.  
 better (adj.), *mēlior*, *us*; (adv.),  
*melius*.  
 bid, (he) bids, *jubet*; (they)  
 bid, *jubent*.  
 big, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*.  
 bird, *avis*, gen. *avis*, *F*.  
 black, *niger*, *nigra*, *nigrum*.  
 blame, (he) blames, *culpat*;  
 (they) blame, *culpant*.  
 body, *corpus* (gen. *corpōris*), *N*.  
 bold, *audāx* (see p. 48).  
 book, *liber* (gen. *libri*), *M*.  
 both, *et*.  
 boy, *puer* (2).  
 brave, *fortis* (see p. 46).  
 bravely, *fortiter*; more bravely,  
*fortius*; most bravely, *fortis-*  
*tissimē*.  
 bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, *M*.  
 broad, *lātus*, *a*, *um*.  
 brother, *frāter* (gen. sing. *frā-*  
*tris*, gen. plur. *frātrum*).  
 build, (he) builds, *aedificat*;  
 (they) build, *aedificant*.  
 burden, *ōnus* (gen. *onēris*), *N*.  
 bust, *imāgō* (gen. *imāginis*), *F*.  
 but, *sed*.  
 by; *by* a person, *ā* or *ab* (*ab*  
 always before a vowel), with  
 the ablative; *by* a thing, the  
 ablative without *ā* or *ab*.

## C

camp, *castra* (2), *N*, plural.  
 can, (he) can, *pōtest*; (they) can,  
*possunt*; (he) cannot, *nōn*  
*potest*.  
 capital, *cāput* (gen. *capitis*), *N*.  
 carry (to), *portāre*.  
 cavalry, *equitēs* (plural of  
*eques*, a horseman).

## C

celebrated, *clārus*, *a*, *um*.  
 certain, *certus*, *a*, *um*.  
 character, *mōrēs* (plural of  
*mōs*), *M*.  
 charge, *impētus* (4), *M*.  
 charm, (he) charms, *dēlectat*;  
 (they) charm, *dēlectant*.  
 Cicero, *Cicērō* (gen. *Cicērō-*  
*nis*).  
 citizen, *civis* (gen. *civis*), *M*.  
 city, *urbs* (gen. *urbis*), *F*.  
 clear, *clārus*, *a*, *um*.  
 cloud, *nūbēs* (gen. *nūbis*), *F*.  
 coast, *lītus* (gen. *litoris*), *N*.  
 cold, *frīgus* (gen. *frīgōris*), *N*.  
 colour, color (gen. *colōris*), *M*.  
 come, (he) comes, *vēnit*; (they)  
 come, *veniunt*.  
 come back, (he) comes back,  
*redit*; (they) come back,  
*redeunt*.  
 come together (to), *convenire*.  
 conquer, *vincō*, *ere*, *vīcī*, *vīc-*  
*tum*.  
 consider, is considered, *habē-*  
*tur*; are considered, *haben-*  
*tur*.  
 content, *contentus*, *a*, *um*.  
 conversation, *sermō* (gen. *ser-*  
*mōnis*), *M*.  
 country, *patria*, *ae*, *F*.  
 courage, *virtūs* (gen. *virtūtis*,  
*fem.*).  
 cowardly, *ignāvus*, *a*, *um*.  
 cross, (he) crosses, *trānsit*;  
 (they) cross, *trānseunt*; that  
 they may cross, *trānseant*  
 (pres. subj.).

## D

daring, *audāx* (see p. 48).  
 dart, *tēlum*, *N*.



## D

**day**, *diēs* (masc., see p. 59);  
every day, *cotīdiē*; to-day,  
*hōdiē*.  
**deaf**, *surdus*, *a, um*.  
**dear**, *cārus*, *a, um*.  
**death**, *mors* (gen. *mortis*), *F*.  
**December**, *December*, *bris*,  
*bre*; in the month of De-  
cember, *mēnse Decembrī*.  
**decorate**, (he) decorates, *ōrnat*;  
(they) decorate, *ōrnant*.  
**defeat**, (he) defeats, *superat*;  
(they) defeat, *superant*; are  
defeated, *superantur*.  
**delight**, (it) delights, *dēlectat*;  
(they) delight, *dēlectant*.  
**demand**, *postulō* (1).  
**desire** (I), *cupiō* (4), *ivī, itum*.  
**despise** (I), *contemnō* (3).  
**different**, *dissimilis*, *e*.  
**difficult**, *difficilis*, *difficile* (for  
the comparison, see p. 66).  
**diligence**, *diligentia*, *F*.  
**distant** (is), *abest*; are distant,  
*absunt*.  
**do**, *agō, faciō*.  
**draw up** (I), *instruō* (3).  
**drive**, (he) drives, *agit*; (they)  
drive, *agunt*.

## E

**ear**, *auris* (gen. *auris*), *F*.  
**easy**, *facilis*, *facile* (for the  
comparison, see p. 66).  
**easily**, *facile*.  
**eighteen**, *undēvigintī*.  
**elder**, *nātū māior* (i.e. greater  
by birth).  
**elephant**, *elephās, antis*; also  
*elephantus*, *i*. The first form  
is usual in nom. case, the  
second in other cases.

## E

**embassador**, *lēgātus*, *i*.  
**enemy**, *hostis* (gen. *hostis*); the  
enemy, *hostēs* (plural).  
**enormous**, *ingēns* (gen. *ingen-  
tis*, abl. *ingentī*).  
**evening** (in the), *vesperī*.  
**every**, *omnis*, *e*.  
**everybody**, *omnēs* (plural of  
*omnis*).  
**every day**, *cotīdiē*.  
**exhort**, *hortor* (1), deponent  
verb, (passive form, active  
meaning).  
**expect** (to), *expectāre*.

## F

**faithful**, *fīdus*, *a, um*.  
**famous**, *clārus* *a, um*.  
**far**, by far, *longē*; is far off,  
*longē abest*; are far off,  
*longē absunt*.  
**farewell**, to one person, *valē*;  
to more than one, *valēte*.  
**farther**, *longius*; farthest, (or)  
very far, *longissimē*.  
**fast**, *celer*, *celeris*, *celere*.  
**father**, *pāter* (gen. sing. *patris*,  
gen. plur. *patrum*).  
**fault**, to find fault with, *cul-  
pāre*.  
**fear**, (he) fears, *tīmet*; (they)  
fear, *timent*.  
**few**, *paucī, ae, a*.  
**fifty**, *quīquāgintā*.  
**fight** (I), *pūgnō* (1).  
**fleet**, *clāssis* (gen. *clāssis*), *F*.  
**flight** (I put to), *fugō* (1).  
**flower**, *flōs* (gen. *flōris*).  
**foot**, *pēs* (gen. *pēdis*); "foot"  
is an adjective in foot-forces,  
*cōpiæ pedestrēs* (*pedester*,  
*pedestris*, *pedestre*).



## F

**forces**, *cōpiae*, plural, F.  
**fortify** (I), *mūniō* (4), (*ivī, itum*).  
**frequent**, *crēber, crēbra, crēbrum*.  
**friend**, *amicus* (2), M.  
**frighten**, (he) frightens, *terret* (2); (they) frighten, *terrent*; is frightened, *terrētur*; are frightened, *terrentur*.  
**from**, *ā* or *ab* (with abl.)  
**full**, *plēnus, a, um*.  
**furnish** (to), *ōrnāre*.

## G

**garden**, *hortus* (2), M.  
**general**, *imperātor, ōris*.  
**German**, *Germānus, a, um*.  
**Germans**, *Germānī*.  
**girl**, *puella* (1).  
**give**, (he) gives, *dat*; (they) give, *dant*; it is given, *datur*.  
**go**, *eō, ire, ivī* or *ii, itum*.  
**go** (let us), *eāmus* (pres. subj.).  
**go out**, (he) goes out, *exit*; (they) go out, *exeunt*.  
**good**, *bonus, a, um*.  
**good-bye**, to one person, *valē*; to more than one, *valēte*.  
**great**, *māgnus, a, um*.

## H

**hand**, *mānus* (4, fem.).  
**happens** (it), *accidit* perf. *accidit*.  
**happy**, *beātus, a, um*.  
**harbour**, *portus* (4), M.  
**has** (2), *habet*; (they) have *habent*.  
**head**, *cāput* (gen. *capitis*), N.

## H

**hear** (to), *audire*.  
**heart**, *animus* (2), M.  
**heavy**, *grāvis, grave*.  
**help** (noun), *auxilium*, (2), N.  
**help** (I), *adsum* (*ad-sum*) with dative.  
**her** (see his).  
**high**, *altus, a, um*; highest praise, *summa laus*.  
**hill**, *collis, is* (masc.).  
**his** is generally left out: *suus* can be used when the *his* means *his own* (i.e. when the *his* refers to the subject of the sentence).  
**hold** (2), *teneō*.  
**hold the tongue** (2), *tāceō*.  
**home**, (to) home, *dōmum*; at home, *dōmī*; from home, *dōmō*.  
**hope**, *spēs* (5), F.  
**horn**, *cornū, ūs, N*.  
**horse**, *equus* (2).  
**horseman**, *eques* (gen. *equitis*), M.  
**hour**, *hōra* (1).  
**house**, *domus* (4, fem., see p. 44).  
**how!** *quam*.  
**how many**, *quot* (how many men, *quot hominēs*).  
**how often?** *quotiēns*.  
**huge**, *ingēns* (gen. *ingentis*).

## I

**I**, *ego* (p. 80).  
**ignorant**, I am ignorant of, *nesciō*, (4).  
**image**, *imāgō* (gen. *imāginis*, fem.).  
**immediately**, *statim*.

## I

**in**, *in*, with the abl., but "in summer," "in winter," etc., are put in the ablative without *in*; "in Rome" is *Romae* (see p. 77, note).  
**in order that**, *ut*.  
**in order that not**, *nē*.  
**incite** (to), *incitāre*, (4).  
**industrious**, *diligēns, entis*.  
**industry**, *diligentia* (1).  
**inform**, he informs Caesar, *Caesarem certiorem facit*; they inform Caesar, *Caesarem certiorem faciunt* (i.e. they make Caesar more certain).  
**inhabit** (I), *incōlō* (3).  
**into**, *in* (with acc.).  
**is**, *est*; **is** — from, *abest*.  
**Italy**, *Italia* (1).

## J

**January**, *Jānuārius*, *ī*, M.  
**June**, *Jūnius*, *ī*, M.

## K

**keen**, *ācer, ācris, ācre* (p. 50).  
**kill**, (he) kills, *interficīt*; (they) kill, *interficiunt*.  
**kind**, *gēnus* (gen. *genēris*), N.  
**king**, *rēx* (gen. *rēgis*), M.  
**know** (I), *sciō* (4); I do not know, *nesciō*.  
**known**, *nōtus, a, um*.

## L

**lame**, *claudus, a, um*.  
**land**, *āger* (gen. *agrī*), M.  
**large**, *māgnus, a, um*.  
**lay waste**, (he) lays waste, *vastat*; (they) lay waste, *vastant*.

## L

**lazy**, *piger, pigra, pigrum*.  
**lead**, (he) leads, *dūcīt*; (they) lead, *dūcunt*; lead out, *ēdūcīt, ēdūcunt*; lead back, *reducīt, redūcunt*.  
**leader**, *dux* (gen. *dūcis*), M.  
**left**, *sinister, sinistra, sinistrum*.  
**legion**, *legiō* (gen. *legiōnis*, fem.).  
**letter**, *epistūla* (1).  
**liberty**, *libertās, ātis* (fem.)  
**life**, *vita* (1).  
**lightning**, *fulgur* (gen. *fulgūris*), N; flashes of lightning, *fulgura*.  
**like**, *similis, simile* (superl. *simillimus*).  
**like** (1), *amō, āre, āvi, ātum*.  
**likeness**, *īmāgō* (gen. *īmāginis*, fem.).  
**listen to**, *audiō* (4).  
**little**, *parvus, a, um*.  
**live** (I), *vivō, vivere, vixī, vīctum*.  
**long** (adjective), *longus, a, um*; (adverb), for a long time, *diū*; for longer, *diūtius*; for very long, *diūtissimē*.  
**lord**, *domīnus* (2).  
**loud**, *māgnus, a, um*.  
**love**, (he) loves, *amat*; (they) love, *amant*; is loved, *amātur*; are loved, *amantur*.

## M

**make**, *fāciō, facere, fēcī, factum*.  
**man**, *homō* (gen. *hōmīnis*); a (good) man, *vir* (gen. *vīrī*).  
**manner**, *mōs* (gen. *mōris*), M.  
**many**, *multī, ae, a*.  
**master**, of pupils, *magister* (gen. *magistrī*), (2); of slaves, *domīnus* (2).  
**matter**, *rēs* (5), F.

## M

**me**, *mē* (p. 80).  
**merchant**, *mercātor* (gen. *mercātoris*), M.  
**message**, *nūntius* (2), M.  
**messenger**, *nūntius* (2), M.  
**middle**, *medius*, a, um; in the middle of summer, *mediā aestāte* (i.e. in middle summer).  
**mile**, *mille passūs* (see p. 70).  
**milk**, *lāc* (gen. *lactis*).  
**mind**, *anīmus* (2), M.  
**mindful**, *mēmōr* (gen. *memōris*).  
**mine**, *meus*, a, um.  
**money**, *pecūnia* (1).  
**month**, *mēnsis* (gen. *mēnsis*, masc.).  
**morning** (in the), *māne*.  
**mother**, *māter* (gen. sing. *mātris*, gen. plur. *mātrum*).  
**mound**, *agger* (gen. *aggēris*), M.  
**much** (by), *multō*.  
**much**, *multus*, a, um.  
**multitude**, *multitūdō* (gen. *multitūdīnis*, fem.).  
**my**, *meus*, a, um (vocative, *mī*).

## N

**name**, *nōmen* (gen. *nōmīnis*), N.  
**neither — nor**, *neque — neque*.  
**never**, *nunquam*.  
**night**, *nox* (gen. sing. *noctis*, gen. plur. *noctium*), F.  
**nineteen**, *undēvigintī*.  
**no**, *nūllus*, a, um. See p. 88.  
**nobody**, *nēmō*, *inīs*. (Use *nūllus* for gen. and *nūllō* for abl.)  
**not**, *nōn*.

## N

**nothing**, *nihil* (neut. indeclinable).  
**now**, *nunc*.  
**number**, *numērus* (2).

## O

**O, O that!** *utinam*.  
**oak**, *quercus* (4, fem.).  
**obey**, *pāreō* (2).  
**obtain**, *acquirō* (3), *sivī*, *sītum*.  
**of**, informs some one of, *dē*.  
**off**, is — off, *abest*.  
**often**, *saepe*.  
**old**, of things, *antīquus*, a, um; of people, two (etc.) years old, *duōs* (etc.) *annōs nātus*; older, *nātū māior*; oldest, *nātū māximus*.  
**old man**, *sēnex* (gen. sing. *sēnis*, gen. plur. *senum*).  
**on**, *in* (with abl.).  
**on to**, *in* (with acc.).  
**once**, at once, *statim*.  
**one**, *ūnus*, a, um (gen. *ūnūs*, p. 88).  
**only**, *sōlus*, a, um (see p. 88); (adv.) *sōlum*.  
**oration**, *ōrātiō* (gen. *ōrātiōnis*, fem.).  
**orator**, *ōrātor* (gen. *ōrātōris*).  
**order**, (he) orders, *jubet*; (they) order, *jubent*.  
**other**, *alius*, a, um (see p. 88).  
**ought** (I), *dēbeō*, (2).  
**our**, *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*.  
**out of doors**, *foris*.  
**overcome**, (he) overcomes, *superat*; (they) overcome, *superant*; *superō* (1).  
**owe** (I), *dēbeō*, (2).  
**owner**, *dominus*, i, M.

## P

parent, *parēns, entis*, M. and F.  
 part, *pars* (gen. *partis*), F.  
 pay, (he) pays, *pendit*; (they) pay, *pendunt*.  
 peace, *pāx, pācis*, fem.  
 perceive, *videō* (2), *vidī, vīsum*.  
 place, *pōnō* (3), *posuī, positum*.  
 pleasant, *grātus, a, um*; *dulcis, e*.  
 please, (it) pleases, *dēlectat*; (they) please, *dēlectant*.  
 poem, *poēma* (gen. *poēmatis*), N.  
 poet, *poēta* (1).  
 poor, *pauper* (gen. *paupēris*).  
 post (1), *collōcō* (1).  
 praise, *laus* (gen. *laudis*), F.  
 praise, (he) praises, *laudat*; (they) praise, *laudant*.  
 present (I am), *adsum*.  
 preserve, *servō* (1).  
 pretty, *pulcher, a, um*.  
 prevent, *prohibeō* (2).  
 prosperity, *rēs secundae*.  
 prow, *prōra* (1).  
 punish (1), *pūniō* (4).  
 pupil, *discipulus* (2).  
 put to flight (1), *fugō* (1).

## Q

queen, *rēgīna* (1).  
 quick, *celer, celēris, celere* (p. 51).  
 quietly, *quiētē*.

## R

rampart, *agger* (gen. *aggēris*), M.  
 read, (he) reads, *lēgit*; (3) (they) read, *legunt*.  
 reign (1), *rēgnō* (1).

## R

remain, (he) remains, *mānet*; (they) remain, *manent*.  
 rest (the), *cēteri*.  
 return, (he) returns, *redit*; (they) return, *redeunt*.  
 reward, *praemium*, N.  
 rich, *dives* (gen. *divitis*).  
 riches, *divitiae, ārum*.  
 right, *dexter, dextra, dextrum*.  
 river, *flūmen* (gen. *flūminis*), N.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus, a, um*.  
 room, *conclāve* (gen. *conclāvis*), N.  
 rose, *rōsa* (1).  
 royal, *rēgius, a, um*.  
 rush, *impētus* (4), M.

## S

sad, *tristis, triste*.  
 said, is said, *dīcitur*; are said, *dīcuntur*.  
 sailor, *nauta* (1).  
 same, *idem* (p. 84).  
 satisfied, *contentus, a, um*.  
 save, *cōservō* (1).  
 say, (he) says, *dīcit*; (they) say, *dīcunt*; (he) is said, *dīcitur*; (they) are said, *dīcuntur*.  
 scarcely, *vix*.  
 sea, *māre* (gen. *māris*), N.  
 see, (he) sees, *videt*; (they) see, *vident*.  
 seek, (he) seeks, *petit*; (they) seek, *petunt*.  
 seem, (he) seems, *vidētur*; (they) seem, *videntur*.  
 seen, (he) is seen, *vidētur*; (they) are seen, *videntur*.  
 send, (he) sends, *mittit*; (they) send, *mittunt*.  
 seventeen, *septendēcim*.  
 seventh, *septimus, a, um*.



## S

sharp, *acūtus*, *a*, *um*.  
 ship, *nāvis* (gen. *nāvis*), *F*.  
 shore, *litus* (gen. *litōris*), *N*.  
 short, *brēvis*, *brēve*.  
 shout, *clāmor* (gen. *clāmōris*), *M*.  
 shouting, *clāmor* (gen. *clāmōris*), *M*.  
 shrill, *acūtus*, *a*, *um*.  
 silent (I am), *taceō* (2).  
 sing, (he) sings, *cānit* (3);  
     (they) sing, *cānunt*.  
 sister, *soror* (gen. *sorōris*).  
 six hundred, *sescentī*, *ae*, *a*.  
 slave, *servus* (2).  
 sleep (I), *dormiō* (4).  
 small, *parvus*, *a*, *um*.  
 so, (with adj.) *tam*; *ita*.  
 so great, *tantus*, *a*, *um*.  
 so that, *ut*.  
 so that not, *ut nōn*.  
 soldier, *mīles* (gen. *mīlītis*).  
 some — others, *aliū — aliū*.  
 some day, *aliquandō* (adv.).  
 sometimes, *interdum* (adv.).  
 son, *filius* (2).  
 song, *carmen* (gen. *carminis*), *N*.  
 soon, *mox*.  
 speech, *orātiō* (gen. *orātiōnis*,  
     fem.).  
 spirited, *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre* (p.  
     50).  
 spur, *calcar* (gen. *calcāris*), *N*.  
 station (to), *collocāre* (1).  
 stay, (he) stays, *manet*; (they)  
     stay, *manent*.  
 steer (I), *rēgō* (3).  
 stream, *flūmen* (gen. *flūmī-*  
     *nis*), *N*.  
 studiously, *studiōsē*.  
 sum of money, *pecūnia* (1).  
 summer, *aestās* (gen. *aestātis*),  
     *F*.

## S

surround, (he) surrounds, *cir-*  
     *cumdat*; (they) surround,  
     *circumdat*.  
 sweet, *dulcis*, *dulce*.

## T

table, *mēnsa* (1).  
 take care, *cūrō* (1).  
 talk, *sermō* (gen. *sermōnis*), *M*.  
 tax, *vectīgal* (gen. *vectīgālis*), *N*.  
 teach, *ērudīō* (4).  
 teacher, *magister*, *trī*.  
 tell, *dīco* (3), *dixī*, *dictum*.  
 territory, *finēs* (plur. of *finis*),  
     *M*.  
 that, conj., *ut*.  
 that not, *nē*; (after expressions  
     of doubt) *quīn*.  
 that, pron., *is*, *ea*, *id*; *ille*, *illa*,  
     *illud* (pp. 83-4).  
 their, *suus*, *a*, *um*.  
 thing, *rēs* (5).  
 thirteen, *tredēcim*.  
 thirty, *trīgintā*.  
 this, *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc* (p. 82).  
 throw, (he) throws, *jacit*;  
     (they) throw, *jaciunt*; of  
     missiles, *mittō* (3).  
 time, *tempus* (gen. *tempōris*), *N*.  
 tired, *fessus*, *a*, *um*.  
 to, meaning motion to, *ad* with  
     acc., but "to Rome" is *Rō-*  
     *nam*, and "(to) home" is  
     *domum*.  
 to-day, *hōdiē*.  
 to-morrow, *crās*.  
 tongue, to hold the tongue,  
     *tacēre*.  
 top, the top of the oak, *summa*  
     *quercus*.  
 town, *oppidum*, *i*, *N*.



## T

troops, *cōpiae* (plur.) M.  
trouble, *rēs adversae*.  
true, *vērus*, *a*, *um*.

## U

uncertain, *incertus*, *a*, *um*.  
unfortunate, *miser*, *a*, *um*.  
unhappy, *miser*, *misēra*, *misērum*.  
unlike, *dissimilis*, *dissimile*;  
superl. *dissimillimus*.  
unmindful, *immēmōr* (gen. *immēmōris*).  
urge, (he) urges on, *incitat*;  
(they) urge on, *incitant*.  
useful, *utilis*, *utile*.

## V

vain, in vain, *frūstrā*.  
victory, *victōria* (1).  
virtue, *virtūs* (gen. *virtūtis*), fem.  
voice, *vōx* (gen. *vōcis*), F.

## W

wait for (I), *expectō* (1).  
war, *bellum*, N; war-ship, *nāvis longa*.  
warn (to), *monēre*.  
waste, (he) lays waste, *vastat*;  
(they) lay waste, *vastant*.  
wave, *flūctus* (4), M.  
we, *nōs*.  
weighty, *grāvis*, *grave*.  
welcome, *grātus*, *a*, *um*.  
well (I am), *valeō* (2).  
well (adj.), *integer*, *integra*, *integrum*.  
what (interrog. pronoun), *quis*,  
*quae*, *quid*; (interrog. adj.)  
*quī*, *quae*, *quod*.

## W

when? *quandō*.  
where? *ubi*.  
which, rel. pron., *quī*, *quae*,  
*quod*. (Interrog. pron., see  
what.)  
which (of two)? *uter*, *a*, *um*.  
white, *albus*, *a*, *um*.  
whole, *tōtus*, *a*, *um* (see p. 88).  
why, *cūr*.  
wide, *lātus*, *a*, *um*.  
wine, *vinum* (2), N.  
wing, *cornū* (of an army)  
(4), N.  
winter, *hiems* (gen. *hiemis*), F.  
wisdom, *sapientia* (1).  
wise, *sāpiēns* (gen. *sapientis*).  
wish, (he) wishes, *cūpit*; (they)  
wish, *cūpiunt*.  
witty, *facētus*, *a*, *um*.  
woman, *mulier* (gen. *mulieris*).  
wood, *silva* (1).  
word, *verbum* (2), N.  
work, *opus* (gen. *opēris*), N.  
worse, *pējor*, *pėjus*, gen. *pējōris*;  
worst, *pessimus*, *a*, *um*.  
would that, *utinam*.  
wretched, *miser*, *misēra*, *misērum*.

## Y

year, *annus* (2), M.  
yesterday, *heri*.  
you, *tū* (sing.), *vōs* (plur., p. 80).  
younger, *nātū minor*; young-  
est, *nātū minimus*.  
young man, *jūvēnis* (gen. sing.  
*juvenis*, gen. plur. *juvenum*).  
your, yours, of one, *tuus*; of  
more than one, *vester*, *vestra*,  
*nestrum*.



















295886

LaL.Gr

C 7713maF

Author Cook, Alfred Marshall

Title Macmillan's shorter Latin course. Rev.ed.

# University of Toronto Library

**DO NOT  
REMOVE  
THE  
CARD  
FROM  
THIS  
POCKET**

**Acme Library Card Pocket**  
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"  
**Made by LIBRARY BUREAU**



